This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

KIRTLAND AND ROGERS

Educ T 919.14.485

GINN AND COMPANY
Ex Libris

Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
AND COMPANY

3 2044 097 074 348

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
NEW YORK · BOSTON · CHICAGO · DALLAS
ATLANTA · SAN FRANCISCO

MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED
LONDON · BOMBAY · CALCUTTA
MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN CO. OF CANADA, LTD.
TORONTO

ROMAN BOY

AN

INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

BY

JOHN COPELAND KIRTLAND

AND

GEORGE BENJAMIN ROGERS

OF

THE PHILLIPS EXETER ACADEMY

New York

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1914

All rights reserved

Educ. T 919.14.485

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & COMPANY
MARCH 17, 1927

COPYRIGHT, 1914,
BY THE MACMILLAN COMPANY.

Set up and electrotyped. Published June, 1914.

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE

WHETHER this book realizes the claim made in its title will be determined by the way in which the boys and girls who have used it do their first reading. It should prepare them to begin with some advantage the study of Caesar or Nepos. We have carefully examined the vocabulary and syntax of these authors, together with *Fabulae Faciles*, Eutropius, and *Viri Romae*, and our choice of words and constructions has been largely based upon their common usage.

Paradigms are given, for the most part, only in the Conspectus of Inflections at the back of the book, where the student will see them entire. This arrangement is supported by two considerations. First, many inflections can be built up from elements already known, and the student will learn them more easily from directions for making the forms than from a paradigm. Secondly, there should be much comparison of forms, that associations may be established as an aid to the memory and the judgment. The verb has been presented with reference to tense-signs. A presentation by conjugation or by voice separates forms that properly go together and makes less effective use of the principle of association.

The future imperative is omitted from the paradigms of the verb, and other rare forms are omitted wherever the omission makes a paradigm easier. On the other hand, we have avoided incomplete paradigms by including forms that might have been employed by a Roman, though they happen not to occur in the extant literature. The neuter of the perfect participle, or the supine, is given as the fourth of the principal parts of verbs, because this answers for intransitive verbs as well as transitive and for those that lack either perfect participle or supine.

Syntax can be firmly grasped only through reading, and no more should be taught in the first year of Latin than is required to vital-

ize forms and make the student familiar with the constructions which he will meet most frequently in the second year. Furthermore, the treatment should be as simple as possible, and it should not be carried beyond the immediate need of the student. We have named only one use of the genitive, for instance, since the translation of the form generally tells all that the student needs to know at this stage. If the translation will cause no difficulty, but the construction must be treated for another reason, the treatment is, so far as is practical, inductive. The sections dealing with syntax follow the Latin exercises, and appear as explanations of the exercises. Formal rules are given at the back of the book, but they can be disregarded, or in their place the teacher can give to the class the wording of the rules in the grammar which it is to use later. What is essential is that explanation and understanding should be placed ahead of a stereotyped rule.

The simplicity of the book gave no occasion for the employment of many of the names recommended by the Joint Committee on Grammatical Nomenclature in the report recently approved by the National Education Association, but our terminology, so far as it goes, has been closely conformed to that recommended. We have rejected only one term — 'past' for participle and infinitive. This term is helpful in the treatment of syntax, but it would, in our opinion, confuse the student who is learning the conjugation of the verb. We believe also that it would be confusing at this stage to employ the two names 'gerundive' and 'future passive participle' to distinguish two uses of the same forms. It has seemed sufficient to call **īdem** demonstrative, and the specific term 'identifying' has not been used. That the past indicative and subjunctive might not be separated, we have added 'descriptive' to the name of the former only in distinguishing the force of this tense from the past absolute force of the perfect, not in the paradigms.

The Latin-English Vocabulary includes all words found in the reading-lessons of connected narrative, except some proper nouns and adjectives. Words of this kind are given only when the English name is different, the nominative is not evident from other

forms, or the person or place is not familiar; and the person or place is not described when the text itself contains sufficient explanation. The total number of Latin words used in the book, exclusive of proper nouns and adjectives, is a little over seven hundred. Many of these words are closely related: for instance, **absum** and **absēns**; **lātus** and **lātē**; **filius** and **filia**; **dux, dūcō, addūcō, dēdūcō, ēdūcō, indūcō, redūcō,** and **ţrādūcō**. About 85 per cent. of the whole number are given by Professor Lodge (*Vocabulary of High School Latin*) among the words of most frequent occurrence in Caesar. A large part of the remainder are required for the adequate treatment of inflection and syntax, or because of their meaning: for instance, **iste, tū, mālō, prōsum, similis, fruor, fungor, vescor, -ne, num, meus, tuus, vester.**

We have made more of etymology than is usual in books intended for beginners, but the derivative and cognate words which we give are put where they can be disregarded. We hope, however, that there will be a disposition to add to this material rather than subtract from it, especially on the English side. The clue to a word's meaning is its derivation, and even in the first year of Latin it is possible to begin to approach words with this guidance. We have given no etymologies that we do not believe helpful to the memory or in other ways. How far they shall be explained is left to the teacher.

The fourteen reading-lessons have been freely adapted from Eutropius, Nepos's *Hannibal*, and Caesar's *Helvetian War*. It has not seemed worth while to attempt greater historical accuracy than that of the Roman writers themselves. The reading-lessons are an integral part of the book. As the fewness of the notes on them indicates, they contain practically nothing that has not been given already in the other lessons. They can, therefore, either be read at sight or used for set reviews.

Some things commonly contained in books of this sort we have unhesitatingly omitted. One of these is a summary review of English grammar. No such review can answer the purposes of all schools; and if a review is necessary, it should either be given

by the English teachers of the school or brought into agreement with their teaching. But ignorance of grammatical terms and rules will usually be remedied most effectively by supplying the information needed with reference to the Latin that is before the class. We have omitted the rules for natural gender, which serve no practical purpose for the beginner. We believe that printed *colloquia* have no value for the student; however valuable may be the use of Latin speech in the drill of the classroom.

We have omitted also some fine details of pronunciation. Rare sounds can be taught more profitably in the few words in which they occur than in a table. It would be particularly unprofitable to present in our table diphthongs which are found in this book in only one or two words, while the letters composing them are distinct vowels in most of the words in which they occur in juxtaposition. Vowels are marked long before consonantal *i*, in the belief that the student's pronunciation of words so printed will be likely to be more nearly correct than if the vowels were left unmarked. There is no simple way of indicating the diphthongal sound before consonantal *i*, and it is more easily taught by example than by precept, as indeed are all sounds.

The advance lesson should always be explained when it is assigned, and the new words pronounced. Often the class can be shown how to build up the new forms, and the learning of the paradigm be deprived thereby of all terror. The authors have found it best in their own teaching to assign for the advance lesson only inflections and vocabulary, and to have both the Latin-English and the English-Latin sentences discussed in class before they are set for outside study. This insures attention to the more important things and removes the temptation to dishonest preparation of lessons. It will be found, we hope, that our treatment of syntax is such as should be given by the teacher when new sentences are taken up at sight.

The division of the book into lessons should not be understood to indicate the proper daily assignment. The amount that can be done each day must be determined for a particular class by the

teacher. Not only are new words and constructions used in the exercises of three successive lessons, but forms, syntax, vocabulary, and idioms are constantly reviewed by frequent repetition throughout the book.

We owe much to friends who have read the proof-sheets of our book, correcting mistakes and suggesting improvements; and we wish to express here our gratitude for this help given us by Professor R. W. Husband, of Dartmouth College, Mr. A. L. Hodges, of the Wadleigh High School, New York City, Mr. B. M. Allen, of Phillips Academy, Andover, Mass., Mr. M. M. Hart, of the McKinley High School, St. Louis, and Dr. C. H. Clark, Mr. F. N. Robinson, Dr. W. H. Gillespie, and Dr. A. R. Wightman, all of Phillips Exeter Academy. The photograph for one of our illustrations was obtained through the kindness of Mr. G. F. Hill, of the Department of Coins and Medals in the British Museum.

JOHN C. KIRTLAND.
GEORGE B. ROGERS.

EXETER, N.H., 25 April, 1914.

CONTENTS

LESSON		PAGE
I.	**Alphabet.** Sounds. Doubled Consonants. Quantity of Vowels. Syllables. Quantity of Syllables. Accent	1
II.	**Present Indicative Active, First Conjugation.** Personal Endings. Number in Nouns. *Agreement of Verb*	4
III.	**Present Indicative Active.** Present Stem. **Present Infinitive Active.** Infinitive Ending. Order of Words	6
IV.	**First Declension.** *Subject. Direct Object.* Position of Adverb. Position of ***-ne***	8
V.	**Present Indicative Passive, First Conjugation.** Personal Endings. *Ablative of Agent*	10
VI.	**Present Indicative Passive**	11
VII.	**Past Indicative Active.** Personal Endings. Tense-Sign. Use of the Past. *Indirect Object.* Position of the Objects	13
VIII.	**Past Indicative Passive.** *Ablative of Means*	15
IX.	**Second Declension: Nouns in *us* and *um*.** Gender. Case-Endings. *Agreement of Noun*	17
X.	**First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in *us*, *a*, *um*. Second Declension: Nouns in *ius* and *ium*.** Exception to Rule for Accent. *Agreement of Adjective.* Position of Adjective	19
XI.	**Future Indicative, First and Second Conjugations.** Tense-Sign. *Dative with Adjectives*	21
XII.	**Second Declension: Nouns in *er*, and *vir*.** Gender. **First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in *er*, *a*, *um*.** *Ablative of Accompaniment*	23
XIII.	**Future Indicative, Third and Fourth Conjugations.** Tense-Sign. *Ablative of Cause or Reason*	25
XIV.	**The Irregular Verb *sum*.** *Descriptive Genitive and Ablative*	27
XV.	**Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic*, *ille*, *iste*.** Use of ***hic*, *ille*, *iste***	29
XVI.	**Perfect Indicative Active.** Personal Endings. Uses of the Perfect	30
XVII.	**Perfect Indicative Passive.** Principal Parts	32

LESSON		PAGE
	THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME	35
XVIII.	**Demonstrative Pronouns: *is* and *idem*.** Use of ***is***. *Ablative of Separation*	36
XIX.	**Past Perfect Indicative**	38
XX.	**Relative Pronoun.** *Agreement of Relative Pronoun*	40
XXI.	**Interrogative Pronoun**	41
XXII.	**Future Perfect Indicative.** *Future Tenses in Subordinate Clauses*	43
XXIII.	**Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*.** Case-Endings. Gender. *Present Indicative with* ***dum***	45
XXIV.	**Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*** (continued). *Perfect Indicative with* ***postquam*** *and* ***ubi***	47
	THE EARLY REPUBLIC	49
XXV.	**Third Declension: Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*.** *Ablative of Respect*	51
XXVI.	**Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō***	53
XXVII.	**Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*.** Case-Endings	55
XXVIII.	**Third Declension: Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*.** Case-Endings. Nouns with Genitive Plural in ***ium***	57
XXIX.	**Personal Pronouns.** Personal Use of ***is***. Omission of Subject. Possessive Adjectives	59
	THE FIRST PUNIC WAR	61
XXX.	**Reflexive Pronoun. Intensive Pronoun.** Use of Reflexive Pronoun. Use of Intensive Pronoun. Use of ***suus***	63
XXXI.	**Third Declension: Adjectives**	65
XXXII.	**Participles. Declension of Participles.** Future Active Participle and Gerundive with ***sum***. *Dative with Intransitive Verbs*. Agreement of Participle. Translation of Participles	67
XXXIII.	**Fourth Declension.** Gender	70
	THE SECOND PUNIC WAR	72
XXXIV.	**Fifth Declension.** Case-Endings. Gender. Compound Verbs. *Dative with Compound Verbs*	74
XXXV.	**Vocative Case.** Review of Case-Endings. Position of Vocative	77

LESSON		PAGE
XXXVI.	**Locative Case.** *Place Where. Place to Which. Place from Which*	79
XXXVII.	**Present Subjunctive Active.** *Clauses of Purpose*	81
XXXVIII.	**Present Subjunctive Passive.** *Relative Clauses of Purpose. Substantive Clauses of Volition*	83
	HANNIBAL'S OATH	85
XXXIX.	**Past Subjunctive Active.** *Use of Subjunctive Tenses*	87
XL.	**Past Subjunctive Passive.** *Clauses of Result. Relative Clauses of Result*	89
XLI.	**Present and Past Subjunctive of *sum*.** *Substantive Clauses of Result*	91
XLII.	**Pronominal Adjectives.** *Descriptive Relative Clauses*	93
XLIII.	**Regular Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of the Comparative. Declension of the Superlative.** Absolute Comparative and Superlative. *Dative of Purpose or Tendency. Double Dative Construction*	95
	HANNIBAL IN THE SECOND PUNIC WAR	97
XLIV.	**Superlative in *rimus*. Superlative in *limus*.** *Ablative of Comparison*	99
XLV.	**Irregular Comparison of Adjectives. Declension of *plūs*.** *Ablative of Measure of Difference*	101
XLVI.	**Regular Comparison of Adverbs. Irregular Adverbs.** *Ablative of Manner*	103
XLVII.	**Perfect Subjunctive.** *Indirect Questions*	106
	THE LAST YEARS OF HANNIBAL	108
XLVIII.	**Past Perfect Subjunctive.** *Harmony of Tenses*	109
XLIX.	Cardinal Numerals. **Declension of Cardinal Numerals.** Use of Cardinal Numerals. *Accusative of Extent or Duration*	112
L.	Ordinal Numerals. *Ablative of Time*	114
LI.	**Present Imperative.** Personal Endings. Irregular Forms	116
LII.	**Indefinite Pronouns.** Use of ***quis*** and ***quisquam***. *Review of Ablative Constructions*	118
	SCIPIO, MARIUS, SULLA	119
LIII.	Verb-Endings. Synopsis of Verbs	121
LIV.	**Present Infinitive Passive.** *Indirect Statements*	123
LV.	**Perfect and Future Infinitives.** *Use of Infinitive Tenses.* ***Quam*** with Superlative	125

LESSON		PAGE
LVI.	**Deponent Verbs**	128
LVII.	**Semi-Deponent Verbs.** *Ablative with Certain Deponents*	130
	THE PLOT OF ORGETORIX	131
LVIII.	**The Irregular Verbs *possum* and *prōsum*.** *Indirect Subordinate Clauses*	133
LIX.	*Ablative Absolute*	135
LX.	**The Irregular Verb *ferō***	137
	CAESAR'S ARRIVAL IN GAUL	138
LXI.	*Causal and Adversative* **cum**-*Clauses*	140
LXII.	**The Irregular Verb *eō*.** **Cum**-*Clauses of Situation*	141
LXIII.	**The Irregular Verbs *volō*, *nōlō*, *mālō*.** **Quō**-*Clauses of Purpose*	143
	THE BEGINNING OF THE HELVETIAN WAR	144
LXIV.	*Review of Subjunctive Constructions*	146
LXV.	**The Irregular Verb *fīō*.** *Dative of Possession*	148
LXVI.	Active Periphrastic Conjugation	149
LXVII.	Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. *Dative of Agent*	151
	BATTLE AND PARLEY	152
LXVIII.	**Gerund.** *Use of Gerund and Gerundive*	154
LXIX.	**Supine.** *Use of Supine in* **um**. *Use of Supine in* **ū**. *Review of Expressions of Purpose*	157
LXX.	*Conditional Complexes*	159
	THE BLUNDER OF CONSIDIUS	160
LXXI.	*Future Conditional Complexes*	162
LXXII.	*Present and Past Conditional Complexes. Summary of Conditional Complexes*	164
	THE DEFEAT AND SURRENDER OF THE HELVETIANS	166
	CONSPECTUS OF INFLECTIONS	168
	RULES OF SYNTAX	214
	POSITION OF WORDS	218
	LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	221
	ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY	239
	INDEX	257

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

MAP (*colored*) . . . . . *Front cover*
Showing places mentioned in this book.

ROMAN BOY . . . . . *Frontispiece*
Head in the British Museum, London, probably representing Octavius (Augustus).

PAGE

ROMAN INSCRIPTION 5
Record of the triumph of Duilius, from the *Acta Triumphorum. C. Duilius M. f(ilius) M. n(epos) co(n)s(ul) primus an(no) CDXCIII navalem (triumphum) de Sicul(is) et classe Poenica egit k(alendis) interkalar(ibus).*

NUMA 16
Roman coin.

ROMAN GIRL . . . . . *Facing* 28
Head in the Museo delle Terme, Rome.

ROMULUS 41
Roman coin.

ROMAN JAVELINS 47
Reconstructed.

BRUTUS . . . . . *Facing* 49
Bronze bust in the Capitoline Museum, Rome.

ROMAN SWORD 52
Found in the Rhine. The dotted lines indicate a reconstruction of the hilt.

ROMAN STANDARDS 56
Roman coin.

SCIPIO . . . . . *Facing* 74
Bust in the Capitoline Museum, Rome.

ANTIOCHUS . . . . . *Facing* 86
Head in the Louvre, Paris.

HANNIBAL'S ELEPHANT AND DRIVER 101
Etruscan coin, probably representing the only elephant that Hannibal had when he reached Etruria.

PAGE

HELMET FROM CANNAE 115
Found on the battle-field.

ROMAN ROAD 117
The *Via Appia*, near Ariccia.

SULLA . . . . . *Facing* 120
Head in the Vatican, Rome.

CAESAR . . . . . *Facing* 139
Statue in the Palazzo dei Conservatori, Rome.

GALLIC TRUMPETS AND SHIELDS 150
Roman coin. The issuer had served under Caesar in Gaul.

MEMORIAL OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL 154
Roman coin, representing perhaps Pallor and Pavor, or a personification of Gaul and a Gaul.

ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH . . . . . *Facing* 161
Relief from the Column of Trajan.

SURRENDER OF BARBARIANS TO ROMAN GENERAL . . *Facing* 167
Relief from the Column of Trajan.

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN

LESSON I

1. Alphabet. — The Latin alphabet is the same as the English, except that it has no *j* or *w*. The letter **i** is used for both a vowel and a consonant sound.

2. Sounds

VOWELS

ā as in *father*.	**a** as in *sofa*.
ē as in *obey*.	**e** as in *pet*.
ī as in *machine*.	**i** as in *it*.
ō as in *tone*.	**o** as in *melody*.
ū as in *rule*.	**u** as in *put*.

DIPHTHONGS

ae like *ai* in *aisle*. **au** like *ou* in *house*. **oe** like *oi* in *boil*.

CONSONANTS

b before **s** or **t** has the sound of *p*.
c always as in *can*, never as in *cell*.
g always as in *get*, never as in *gem*.
i[1] like *y* in *yes*.
qu as in *queen*.
s always as in *this*, never as in *is*.
t always as in *text*, never as in *negotiation*.
v like *w* in *wit*.
x always as in *exercise*, never as in *exert*.
The other consonants are pronounced as in English.

---

[1] **i** is usually a consonant when it stands at the beginning of a word with a vowel following it, and when it stands between vowels within a word.

3. Doubled Consonants. — When a consonant is doubled, it should be distinctly pronounced twice: **mit-tō**. Compare English *set-to* with *setting*.

4. Quantity of Vowels. — In this book all long vowels are marked, and vowels not marked are short. The quantity of the vowels in a particular word must in most cases be learned with the word, but there are some general rules: —

1. A vowel is long before **nf** or **ns**: **īn-fert, frōns, mōns.**

2. A vowel is regularly short before **nd, nt,** another vowel, or **h**: **fron-dis, mon-tis, de-a, ni-hil.**

5. Exercise in Pronunciation

1. vīs, vir. 2. aes, aut. 3. sī, īs, is. 4. dās, dat. 5. quī, quae. 6. nōn, nox. 7. sub, plēbs. 8. dēs, det. 9. iam, gēns. 10. mē, tot. 11. tū, tum. 12. dā, dē, dī, dō. 13. at, et, it, ut. 14. dēns, urbs.

6. Syllables

1. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs: **de-a, de-ae.**

2. A single consonant between two vowels is pronounced with the vowel following it: **a-mat, a-qua.**[1]

3. When there are two or more consonants between two vowels, the first consonant is pronounced with the vowel before it: **mit-tō, cas-tra, at-que.**

4. When, however, the first consonant is a mute[2] and the second is **l** or **r**, both are regularly pronounced with the vowel following them: **a-grī.**

---

[1] Notice that **u** is not a vowel when it follows **q**, and that **qu** counts as a single consonant.

[2] The mutes are **p, b, t, d, c, g.**

7. Quantity of Syllables

1. A syllable is long if it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **rē-gēs, cau-sae.**

2. A syllable is long if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consonants, or by **x**[1]; but the vowel is pronounced short: **mit-tunt, u-xor.**

3. When, however, the first consonant is a mute and the second is l or r, the syllable is regularly short: **a-grī.**

4. A syllable is short if it contains a short vowel followed by another vowel or by a single consonant: **de-a, a-mat, a-qua.**

8. Accent

1. In words of two syllables the accent falls on the first syllable: **ā′-ra, a′-mō.**

2. In words of three or more syllables the accent falls on the penult,[2] if this is long; but if the penult is short, the accent falls on the antepenult: **a-mā′-bam, a-mā′-bi-tis, a-mā-vis′-tis.**

9. Exercise in Pronunciation

1. agger, sagitta. 2. ratiō, item. 3. nautae, paucitās, coepī. 4. ageris, agēris. 5. lātē, īre, valē, mare. 6. fīliīs, fīliārum. 7. absum, subter. 8. exercitus, exercitūs, exercitibus. 9. eques, equitēs, equitibus. 10. iūstitia, iūstitiā. 11. arbitror, alacris, fenestra. 12. amābāmus, amābimus. 13. amāvī, amāvimus, amāvistī. 14. iaciō. 15. nūllus, appropinquō. 16. īnsidiae, appropinquāverātis, appropinquāveritis. 17. fīnēs, eat. 18. rēgnat, rēgnatque.

---

[1] This is because **x** is a double consonant, equivalent to *cs*. So **uxor** is pronounced *uc-sor*.

[2] The penult is the syllable next to the last, and the antepenult is the syllable before the penult.

LESSON II

10. Present Indicative Active, First Conjugation

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	amō, *I love, am loving, do love.*
SECOND PERSON:	amās, *you love, are loving, do love.*
THIRD PERSON:	amat, *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	amāmus, *we love, are loving, do love.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātis, *you love, are loving, do love.*
THIRD PERSON:	amant, *they love, are loving, do love.*

11. Personal Endings. — From the forms given above may be made a table of endings which denote person and number in verbs: —

ō, *I.*	mus, *we.*
s, *you* (singular).	tis, *you* (plural).
t, *he, she,* or *it.*	nt, *they.*

12. Number in Nouns

SINGULAR	PLURAL
sagitta, *an arrow, the arrow.*	sagittae, *arrows, the arrows.*
fēmina, *a woman, the woman.*	fēminae, *women, the women.*

13. Vocabulary

amō, *love. amateur.*[1]
appropinquō, *approach. propinquity.*
dēmigrō, *move away, remove. migration.*
parō, *prepare.*
properō, *hasten.*
pugnō, *fight. pugnacious.*
rēgnō, *reign.*
superō, *excel;* also *conquer. insuperable.*
vocō, *call. vocation.*
fēmina, *woman. feminine.*
fīlia, *daughter. filial.*
nauta, *sailor. nautical.*
Numa, *Numa,* second king of Rome.
sagitta, *arrow.*
et, conjunction, *and.*

[1] Words in this type are etymologically related to the Latin words.

Exercises

14. Inflect in the present indicative active all the verbs in the vocabulary.

Form the plural of **fīlia** and of **nauta.**

15. 1. dēmigrant, properat. 2. parās, appropinquātis. 3. rēgnās, pugnant. 4. parātis, pugnāmus. 5. rēgnō, vocās. 6. Fēmina vocat,[1] fīliae[2] properant. 7. Sagittae superant. 8. Numa dēmigrat. 9. Fēminae appropinquant. 10. Nauta pugnat et superat. 11. Numa rēgnat. 12. Fēmina et fīlia properant.

16. Agreement of Verb. — From an examination of the Latin sentences discover the rule for the agreement of the verb with its subject.

17. 1. I-call, he-reigns. 2. you-fight, you-are-conquering. 3. we-hasten, he-is-preparing. 4. he-fights, you-reign. 5. you-are-calling, they-approach. 6. they-are-preparing, he-moves-away. 7. they-call, they-do-call. 8. The-sailors are-hastening. 9. The-woman and her[3] daughter are-approaching. 10. The-sailors move-away. 11. The-arrows excel. 12. The-arrow excels.

[1] A personal pronoun is not to be used in translating a verb which has its subject expressed: **fēmina vocat,** *the woman calls,* not *the woman she calls.*

[2] *her daughters.* Latin does not express the possessive adjectives when they are not required for clearness.

[3] This word need not be put into Latin.

ROMAN INSCRIPTION

LESSON III

18. Present Indicative Active. — Learn the present indicative active of **moneō**, *advise*; **regō**, *guide*; **audiō**, *hear* (section 490).

19. Present Stem. — The present stem[1] ends in **ā** in the first conjugation, **ē** in the second, and **ī** in the fourth: **amā-**, **monē-**, **audī-**. Before which of the personal endings is the final vowel of the stem shortened? Notice that it does not appear in the first person singular of the first conjugation, and that the third person plural of the fourth conjugation is formed irregularly (not **audint**, but **audiunt**).

In the third conjugation the final vowel of the present stem varies. Notice that it does not appear in the first person singular (compare the first conjugation), is **u** before **nt**, and **i** elsewhere.

20. Present Infinitive Active

amāre	monēre	regere	audīre
to love	*to advise*	*to guide*	*to hear*

21. Infinitive Ending. — The ending of the present infinitive active is **re**.

The present infinitive active, or the final vowel of the stem with the infinitive ending, is given to show to which of the four conjugations a verb belongs:—

I	II	III	IV
āre	**ēre**	**ere**	**īre**

Notice that in the infinitive of the third conjugation the final vowel of the stem is **e**.

[1] By stem is meant that part of a word to which the endings are added.

22. Vocabulary

audiō, -īre, *hear*. *audible*.
dēbeō, -ēre, *owe*, *ought*. *debt*.
maneō, -ēre, *stay*, *remain*. *permanent*.
mittō, -ere, *send*. *mission*.
moneō, -ēre, *advise*, *warn*. *monitor*.
regō, -ere, *guide*, *direct*. *regent*.
veniō, -īre, *come*. *advent*.
conveniō, -īre, *come together*, *assemble*. *convention*.
videō, -ēre, *see*. *visible*.
amīcitia, *friendship*. [amō].[1]
dea, *goddess*. *deity*.
nōn, adverb, *not*. *nonsense*.
sed, conj., *but*.

Exercises

23. Inflect **videō**, **mittō**, and **veniō** in the present indicative active.

24. 1. mittitis, monētis. 2. venītis, superātis. 3. mittunt, mittit. 4. convenīmus, manent. 5. monent, regunt. 6. Dea monet. 7. Dēbēs vidēre et audīre. 8. Fēminae dēmigrāre properant. 9. Nautae conveniunt et pugnāre parant. 10. Nōn manēre dēbēmus, sed properāre. 11. Fēmina vocat, fīliae venīre properant. 12. Dea audit et venit.

25. Order of Words. — The position of words in a Latin sentence is largely determined by emphasis. Notice, however, that the subject normally stands first in the sentence and the verb last.

26. 1. The women are approaching. 2. Friendship remains. 3. Numa comes, but does[2] not stay. 4. You ought to assemble. 5. The sailors are coming together. 6. Numa is reigning. 7. We are preparing to fight. 8. A goddess guides. 9. A sailor calls, but we do not hear. 10. He sends, but his daughters do not come.

---

[1] Latin words in brackets are etymologically related to the other Latin words with which they are given.

[2] *does stay* is one word in Latin.

LESSON IV

27. First Declension

CASES	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
NOMINATIVE:	sagitta, *an arrow, the arrow.*	a
GENITIVE:	sagittae, *of an arrow, the arrow.*	ae
DATIVE:	sagittae, *to* or *for an arrow, the arrow.*	ae
ACCUSATIVE:	sagittam, *an arrow, the arrow.*	am
ABLATIVE:	sagittā, *by* or *with*[1] *an arrow, the arrow.*	ā
	PLURAL	
NOMINATIVE:	sagittae, *arrows, the arrows.*	ae
GENITIVE:	sagittārum, *of arrows, the arrows.*	ārum
DATIVE:	sagittīs, *to* or *for arrows, the arrows.*	īs
ACCUSATIVE:	sagittās, *arrows, the arrows.*	ās
ABLATIVE:	sagittīs, *by* or *with arrows, the arrows.*	īs

28. Vocabulary

aqua, *water.* *aquatic.*
Italia, *Italy.*
patria, *fatherland, country.* *expatriate.*
pugna, *battle, fight.* [pugnō].
silva, *wood, forest.* *sylvan.*
via, *road, way.* *deviate.*
exspectō, -āre, *wait for, await.*
petō, -ere, *seek, beg.* *petition.*
relinquō, -ere, *leave, abandon.* *relic.*
in, preposition, followed by the abl. case, *in, on.*
-ne, enclitic,[2] used to denote a question.
saepe, adverb, *often, frequently.*

Exercises

29. Decline **nauta, fēmina, silva.**

30. 1. Fēmina nautam vocat. 2. Numa in silvā manet et deam exspectat. 3. Dea Numam saepe monet. 4. Numa

---

[1] The ablative has other meanings, which will be given in later lessons.
[2] Enclitics are little words that cannot stand alone, but are joined to the word they follow.

patriam regit. 5. Fēmina aquam in silvā petit. 6. Fēmina fīliam exspectat, sed fīlia nōn venit. 7. Vidēsne[1] aquam in silvā? 8. Viam relinquō et aquam videō. 9. Nautaene appropinquant? 10. Nautae appropinquant et pugnāre parant. 11. Conveniunt et pugnam exspectant. 12. Nautaene aquam amant? 13. Nautae aquam amant. 14. Aquamne (*see section 34 below*) nautae amant? 15. Aquam nautae amant. 16. Amantne nautae aquam? 17. Nōn amant nautae aquam.

31. Subject. — What case is used in the sentences to denote the subject?

32. Direct Object. — Sentences 1–8 and 11–17 contain transitive verbs and their direct objects. Find the object in each sentence, and notice its case.

33. Position of Adverb. — An adverb normally stands just before the word it modifies, as in sentences 3, 6, 17.

34. Position of *-ne*. — The enclitic **-ne** is usually joined to the first word in the question, since it naturally goes with the word upon which the question turns, and this is the emphatic word. Sentences 12, 14, and 16 must be translated by the same English sentence, but the effect of the difference in the order of the Latin words can be brought out in oral translation by stressing the emphatic word.

35. 1. The woman sends her daughter frequently. 2. You see the arrows in the road. 3. They move away and leave their country. 4. Do they love their country? 5. Ought we to seek friendship? 6. A sailor loves the water. 7. Numa is reigning in Italy. 8. The woman excels her daughter. 9. They hear, and hasten to leave the arrows.

---

[1] **-ne** cannot be translated by any single word. In English a question is denoted by the order of the words: **vidēsne?** *do you see?* **videō,** *I do see.*

LESSON V

36. Present Indicative Passive, First Conjugation

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON: amor, *I am* (*being*) *loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amāris *or* amāre, *you are* (*being*) *loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amātur, *he* (*she, it*) *is* (*being*) *loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON: amāmur, *we are* (*being*) *loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amāminī, *you are* (*being*) *loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amantur, *they are* (*being*) *loved.*

37. Personal Endings. — How do the active and the passive endings differ in the third person? In the first person plural? How is the first person singular passive formed from the first person singular active? Before which of the passive endings is the final vowel of the stem shortened?

r, *I.*	**mur**, *we.*
ris or **re**, *you* (singular).	**minī**, *you* (plural).
tur, *he, she,* or *it.*	**ntur**, *they.*

38. Vocabulary

dēfendō, **-ere**, *defend.*
dēleō, **-ēre**, *destroy.* ***indelible.***
servō, **-āre**, *save, preserve.*
temptō, **-āre**, *try, tempt.*
fortūna, *fortune.*
īnsula, *island.* ***insular.***
lupa, *wolf.*
porta, *gate* (of a city). ***portal.***
Rōma, *Rome.*
Trōia, *Troy*, a famous ancient city.
victōria, *victory.*
ab or **ā**,[1] prep. with abl., *by.*
ad, prep. with acc., *to.* ***advent.***

Exercises

39. Inflect **servō**, **exspectō**, and **superō** in the present indicative passive.

[1] **Ā** is not used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**.

40. 1. Fortūna īnsulam servat. 2. Fēmina fīliam ad portam mittit. 3. Victōriam, nōn amīcitiam petunt. 4. Veniuntne ad portās? 5. Rōmam dēlent et relinquunt. 6. Patriam amāre et dēfendere dēbētis. 7. Fortūnam saepe temptāre nōn dēbēmus. 8. Nautae in īnsulā manent. 9. Dea Rōmam servat. 10. Rōma ā deā servātur. 11. Fēmina nautam vocat. 12. Nauta ā fēminā vocātur. 13. Viam in silvā petimus. 14. Fēmina ā fīliā amātur.

41. Ablative of Agent. — Examine sentences 10, 12, and 14, and discover how the person by whom a thing is done is denoted in Latin when the verb is passive.

In the change to the passive voice what becomes of the subject of the active verb? What becomes of the object?

42. 1. The goddess is awaited by Numa, but she does not come. 2. The sailors assemble and leave Troy. 3. The woman is called to the gate by her daughter. 4. Water destroys the road. 5. The women hear and see a wolf on the island. 6. You are defending your country in battle. 7. Are we being called by the sailors? 8. You are loved by your daughter. 9. Numa is warned and guided by the goddess.

LESSON VI

43. Present Indicative Passive. — Learn the present indicative passive of **moneō, regō,** and **audiō** (section 490).

Notice that in the second person singular of the third conjugation the final vowel of the stem is not **i**, as in the active, but **e.**

Exercises

44. 1. vocor, audiō. 2. temptant, superantur. 3. audiuntur, venit. 4. dēlentur, dēfenditis. 5. vocāminī, convenītis. 6. mittitur, petunt. 7. vidēmur, venīs. 8. servāris,

servāminī. 9. relinquunt, relinquuntur. 10. exspectāmus, exspectāmur. 11. vidēris, videor. 12. audīmus, parāmus. 13. manēs, dēmigrat.

45. 1. you are being left, we are sent. 2. you are sending, you are loved. 3. they are approaching, it is being fought. 4. we move away, we do hasten. 5. she is seen, it is seen. 6. he reigns, he is reigning. 7. they assemble, they are warned. 8. I am heard, I am warned. 9. I remain, I am conquering. 10. he guides, it is guided.

46. Vocabulary

dūcō, -ere, *lead*. ***aqueduct***.
habeō, -ēre, *have*. ***habit***.
impediō, -īre, *check*, *impede*.
incendō, -ere, *fire*, *burn*. ***incendiary***.
mūniō, -īre, *fortify*. ***ammunition***.
oppugnō, -āre, *attack*, *besiege*. [**pugnō**].
reperiō, -īre, *find*. ***repertory***.
cōpia, *abundance*; in plural, *forces*, *troops*. ***copious***.
fāma, *report*, *fame*.
fuga, *flight*. ***fugitive***.
grātia, *favor*, *influence*. ***gracious***.
Porsena, *Porsena*, an enemy of Rome.
Scaevola, *Scaevola*, a Roman hero.
celeriter, adv., *quickly*. ***celerity***.

Exercises

47. Inflect **videō**, **relinquō**, and **impediō** in the present indicative passive.

48. 1. Cōpiās ad Italiam celeriter dūcimus. 2. Lupaene in viā saepe videntur? 3. Rōma ā Porsenā oppugnātur, sed ā Scaevolā dēfenditur. 4. Cōpiae Porsenae[1] in silvā relinquuntur. 5. Fīliae fēminae ā nautā servantur. 6. Rōma

[1] Genitive, *of Porsena* or *Porsena's*. Notice that the genitive may often be translated by the English genitive instead of a prepositional phrase

celeriter mūnītur. 7. Portās Rōmae incendere temptant. 8. Aqua in silvīs īnsulae reperītur. 9. Grātia deārum ā fēminīs saepe petitur. 10. Silvae fugam cōpiārum impediunt. 11. Cōpiam sagittārum habētis.

49. 1. You ought to seek victory and fame. 2. Are you waiting for the favor of Numa? 3. Troy is fired and destroyed. 4. She has the sailor's arrow. 5. He has the sailors' arrows. 6. The report comes to Porsena. 7. Scaevola's country is being attacked by Porsena. 8. Fortune directs battles.

LESSON VII

50. Past Indicative Active. — Learn the past indicative active of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** (sections 489, 490).

51. Personal Endings. — Notice that the personal endings are the same as in the present tense, except that the first person singular has **m** instead of **ō**.

52. Tense-Sign. — Notice that the past indicative is made up of the present stem, the tense-sign **bā**, and the personal endings. The final vowel of the stem is lengthened to **ē** in the third conjugation, and in the fourth **ī** becomes **iē**. All conjugations except the first have then **ē** before the tense-sign **bā**. Before which of the personal endings is the long vowel of the tense-sign shortened?

53. Use of the Past. — The past represents an action as going on at some past time: **monēbam**, *I was advising, I advised,* or *I did advise.*

54. Vocabulary

dēmōnstrō, -āre, *point out, show. demonstrative.*
dō, -are,[1] *give. dative.*
nūntiō,[2] **-āre,** *announce, report.*
captīva, *captive, prisoner.*
pecūnia, *money. pecuniary.*
praeda, *booty, plunder. depredation.*
terra, *earth, land. subterranean.*
vīta, *life. vital.*
dē, prep. with abl., *about, concerning.*
per, prep. with acc., *through. permanent.*
tum, adv., *at that time, then.*
ubi, adv., *where.*

Exercises

55. Inflect in the past indicative active **nūntiō, dēleō, dūcō,** and **reperiō.**

56. 1. Italiam dēfendere parābant. 2. Captīvīs[3] pecūniam dant. 3. Pecūnia captīvīs datur. 4. Trōia incenditur et praeda cōpiīs datur. 5. Pugna Porsenae[4] celeriter nūntiātur. 6. Ubi captīva pecūniam reperiēbat? 7. In īnsulā pecūniam reperiēbat. 8. Vīta Scaevolae ā Porsenā servātur. 9. Nautīs terram dēmōnstrābāmus. 10. Ubi lupam vidēbātis? 11. Tum captīvās ad Porsenam mittēbāmus. 12. Fāma dē victōriā fugam cōpiārum impediēbat.

57. Indirect Object. — The use of the dative shown in the sentences above is called the dative of the indirect object. Notice that the dative of the indirect object is used with transitive verbs, with an accusative of the direct object when the verb is active.

58. Position of the Objects. — The indirect object normally stands before the direct object, as in sentences 2 and 9 above.

---

[1] The **a** of **dō** is regularly short, but long in **dās.**
[2] Notice that this verb, though it ends in **iō,** is not of the fourth conjugation.
[3] Dative, *to the captives.*
[4] Dative.

59. 1. We were not preparing to fortify the gates. 2. We gave our money to the fatherland. 3. The booty they left in the road. 4. Money was given to the troops by Porsena. 5. Did you hear often about the fortunes of your daughter? 6. You were showing the arrows to the woman. 7. He is led by the goddess through the forests to[1] the gates of Rome. 8. Porsena was then besieging Rome. 9. They tried the road through the forest and were destroyed. 10. At that time I had influence in Italy.

LESSON VIII

60. Past Indicative Passive. — Inflect **amō, moneō, regō,** and **audiō** in the past indicative passive by substituting the passive personal endings for the active (sections 489, 490). Remember that a long vowel is not shortened before the passive ending for the third person singular.

61. **Vocabulary**

augeō, -ēre, *increase. auction.*
expellō, -ere, *drive out, expel.*
perveniō, -īre, *arrive, come.* [**per** + **veniō**].
vulnerō, -āre, *wound. vulnerable.*
fossa, *ditch, trench.*
īnsidiae,[2] *ambush, treachery. insidious.*
ex or **ē,**[3] prep. with abl., *out of, from. expel.*
ibi, adv., *in that place, there.*
sīc, adv., *in this way, so, thus.*

Exercises

62. Inflect in the past indicative passive **vulnerō, videō, expellō,** and **impediō.**

---

[1] When used of motion, *to* is not to be rendered by the dative, but by **ad** with the accusative.

[2] This is nom. pl. The singular is not used. Decline it **īnsidiae, īnsidiārum,** etc.

[3] **Ē** is not used before words beginning with a vowel or **h.**

63. 1. Lupam sagittā vulnerat. 2. Fuga lupae aquā impediēbātur. 3. Ibi sagittīs pugnābant. 4. Cōpiae ex Italiā conveniēbant. 5. Vītam fugā servābam. 6. Ubi praedam reperiēbātis? 7. Via Porsenae ā captīvā dēmōnstrātur. 8. Tum cōpiās per silvās celeriter dūcit. 9. Cōpiās augēmus et Rōmam fossā mūnīmus. 10. Victōria Numae ā nautā nūntiābātur. 11. Fāma dē victōriā ad Numam pervenit. 12. Trōia oppugnābātur, portae incendēbantur. 13. Trōia per īnsidiās dēlētur.

64. Ablative of Means. — When used as in sentences 1, 2, 3, 5, and 9, the ablative is called the ablative of means.

Notice that the ablative of means differs in several respects from the ablative of agent: —

	DENOTES	LATIN PREPOSITION	ENGLISH PREPOSITION
ABL. OF AGENT:	a person	**ab** or **ā**	*by*
ABL. OF MEANS:	a thing	none	*by* or *with*

65. 1. Was the woman's life saved by flight? 2. The flight of the troops was impeded by the trenches. 3. She has the money. 4. At that time you were being expelled from Italy. 5. He is increasing his influence by victories. 6. We did not give the money to the troops. 7. In this way the sailors came to land. 8. The sailor gave the booty to his daughter. 9. The wolf was wounded with an arrow by the sailor. 10. In that place they were preparing an ambush.

NUMA

LESSON IX

66. Second Declension: Nouns in *us* and *um*

	mūrus *wall*		bellum *war*	
		SINGULAR		
		ENDINGS		ENDINGS
NOM.	mūrus	us	bellum	um
GEN.	mūrī	ī	bellī	ī
DAT.	mūrō	ō	bellō	ō
ACC.	mūrum	um	bellum	um
ABL.	mūrō	ō	bellō	ō
		PLURAL		
NOM.	mūrī	ī	bella	a
GEN.	mūrōrum	ōrum	bellōrum	ōrum
DAT.	mūrīs	īs	bellīs	īs
ACC.	mūrōs	ōs	bella	a
ABL.	mūrīs	īs	bellīs	īs

67. Gender

1. Nouns of the first declension are feminine, except those that denote males.

2. Nouns of the second declension ending in **us** are regularly masculine; those ending in **um** are neuter.

68. Case-Endings

1. Notice that the nominative and the accusative singular of **bellum** have the same ending, and likewise the nominative and the accusative plural; and that the ending in the plural is **a**. This is true of all neuter nouns.

2. In masculine and feminine nouns the ending of the accusative singular is always a short vowel and **m**; that of the accusative plural is always a long vowel and **s**.

69. Vocabulary

amīcus, *friend*. [**amīcitia**].
bellum, *war*. ***belligerent***.
castra,[1] *camp*.
Ēgeria, *Egeria*, a goddess.
Labiēnus, *Labienus*, a Roman officer.
lēgātus, *ambassador*; also *lieutenant*. ***legation***.
mūrus, *wall*. ***mural***.
oppidum, *town*.
perīculum, *danger*, *peril*.
pīlum, *javelin*.
Rōmānī (pl.), *the Romans*.
Rōmulus, *Romulus*, founder and first king of Rome.
tēlum, *missile*, *weapon*.
condō, **-ere**, *found*, *build*.
gerō, **-ere**, *carry on*, *wage*. ***belligerent***.
terreō, **-ēre**, *frighten*, *terrify*.
est, *he* (*she*, *it*) *is*.
sunt, *they are*.

Exercises

70. Decline **fossa**, **lēgātus**, and **oppidum**.

71. 1. Labiēnum lēgātum nōn vulnerant. 2. Labiēnus lēgātus nōn vulnerātur. 3. Tēla sunt sagittae. 4. Ibi amīcī Rōmulī pīlīs vulnerābantur. 5. Porsena cōpiās ad silvam celeriter dūcit et Rōmānōs exspectat. 6. Sīc perīculum īnsidiārum augētur. 7. Perīculum Rōmānōs nōn terret. 8. Tum Rōmānī Italiam bellō[2] superābant. 9. Lēgātī dē amīcitiā ad Rōmānōs ex castrīs mittēbantur. 10. Oppidum Trōiam vocant. 11. Oppidum Trōia vocātur. 12. Rōma ā Rōmulō condēbātur. 13. Labiēnō lēgātō pecūniam dabant.

72. Agreement of Noun. — What is the case of **lēgātum** in sentence 1? **lēgātus** in 2? **sagittae** in 3? **Trōiam** in 10? **Trōia** in 11? **lēgātō** in 13? Notice that each of these nouns belongs to some other noun

---

[1] This is neuter nom. pl. of the second declension, not nom. sing. of the first. Decline it **castra**, **castrōrum**, etc.

[2] Literally *with war*, but English usage requires *in war*. In translating, first make sure that you know the literal meaning of the Latin words, and then express the idea in the best English you can.

denoting the same person or thing, and that it stands in the same case as that other noun.

73. 1. Egeria is a goddess. 2. The goddess Egeria warns Numa. 3. You called Egeria a goddess. 4. Where is[1] the camp? 5. The battle is reported to the lieutenant. 6. He shows the booty to his friends. 7. The woman's daughter is a captive. 8. The Romans were fortifying the town with a wall and a ditch. 9. Numa did not wage war. 10. They come through the forests to the town and drive out the Romans. 11. Rome is in the land of[2] Italy. 12. Porsena's life is in danger. 13. Porsena was not often frightened.

LESSON X

74. First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in *us, a, um*

Learn the declension of **bonus,** *good* (section 464).

Notice that the masculine of **bonus** is declined like **mūrus,** the feminine like **sagitta,** the neuter like **bellum.**

75. Second Declension: Nouns in *ius* and *ium*

Learn the declension of **fīlius,** *son,* and **cōnsilium,** *plan* (section 458).

Notice that these nouns have **ī,** not **ii,** in the genitive singular.

76. Exception to Rule for Accent. — In the genitive singular of nouns in **ius** and **ium** the accent falls on the penult, even when this is short: **cōn-si'-lī.**

---

[1] Notice that the subject is *camp,* and in writing the Latin verb be careful to follow the rule for agreement of verb with subject.

[2] In Latin *the land Italy,* not *the land of Italy.*

77. Vocabulary

bonus, *good*.
longus, *long*.
magnus, *large, great*. ***magnitude***.
multus, *much*; in pl., *many*. ***multitude***.
Alba Longa, *Alba Longa*, an ancient town of Italy.
annus, *year*. ***annual***.
Ascanius, *Ascanius*, founder of Alba Longa.
cōnsilium, *plan*; also *discretion*.
fīlius, *son*. [**fīlia**].
nūntius, *messenger*; also *news*. [**nūntiō**].
praesidium, *guard, garrison*.
proelium, *battle, engagement*.
rēgnum, *reign, throne*. [**rēgnō**].
Trōiānī (pl.), *the Trojans*, the people of Troy.
obtineō, **-ēre**, *hold, possess*. ***tenant***.
posteā, adv., *afterward*. ***posterity***.

Exercises

78. Decline **praesidium**, **nūntius**, and **magnus**.

79. 1. Multī Trōiānī ad Italiam perveniunt. 2. Ibi oppidum condunt et magnās cōpiās superant. 3. Posteā rēgnum ab Ascaniō obtinēbātur. 4. Ascanius Trōiānīs multa et[1] bona cōnsilia dēmōnstrābat. 5. Ascanius Albam Longam, magnum Italiae oppidum, condit. 6. Fīliī lēgātī pīlīs vulnerābantur. 7. Nōn longum est tēlum, sed magnum. 8. Castra magnō in perīculō sunt. 9. Proelium Rōmānīs nūntiātur et praesidium ex oppidō dūcitur. 10. Mūnīturne Rōma mūrō et fossā? 11. Multae fēminae grātiam bonae deae petēbant. 12. Amīcus Rōmānōrum ā nūntiīs vocābar. 13. Oppida multōs per annōs dēfendēbantur.

80. Agreement of Adjective. — Notice that each adjective in the Latin sentences agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies.

[1] To be omitted in translating. A conjunction is frequently used to connect **multus** and another adjective which modifies the same noun.

81. Decline together **sagitta bona, mūrus bonus, cōnsilium bonum, bonus filius, magna cōpia, longum pīlum**; also **nauta bonus**, noting the gender of **nauta**.

82. Position of Adjective. — An adjective may either precede or follow the noun it modifies; a genitive normally follows the noun it modifies. When an adjective and a genitive modify the same noun, the order is often adjective, genitive, modified noun, as in sentence 5 above. When a monosyllabic preposition is used with a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition often stands between the adjective and the noun, as in sentences 8 and 13 above.

83. 1. The weapons of the Trojans are long arrows. 2. Thus war increased the fame of Alba Longa. 3. At that time Ascanius held the throne. 4. We saw the discretion of Ascanius. 5. Ascanius called the town Alba Longa. 6. A large garrison was left in the town of[1] Alba. 7. Porsena waged many great wars. 8. The lieutenant's forces were driven out from the town through treachery. 9. The news terrifies Romulus.

LESSON XI

84. Future Indicative, First and Second Conjugations

Learn the future indicative, active and passive, of **amō** and **moneō** (sections 489, 490).

85. Tense-Sign. — Notice that the tense-sign of the future indicative in the first and second conjugations is **b** followed by a vowel which varies in the same way as the final vowel of the stem in the present of the third conjugation.

---

[1] See section 73, sentence 11.

86. Vocabulary

dēligō, -ere, *choose, select.* ***eligible.***
arma (neut. pl.), *arms.*
imperium, *power, rule.* ***imperial.***
locus (pl. **loca.**[1]), *place, position.* ***local.***
populus, *people, nation.* ***popular.***
Remus, *Remus*, brother of Romulus.
signum, *signal*; also *standard* (military).
amīcus,[2] *friendly.*
idōneus, *suitable.*
propinquus, *near, neighboring.* [**ap-propinquō**].
Rōmānus, *Roman.*
in, prep. with acc., *into.*[3]
sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under.* ***subterranean.***

Exercises

87. Inflect **vulnerō** and **obtineō** in the future indicative active; **servō** and **terreō** in the future indicative passive.

Decline **insidiae, castra, arma,** and **locus.**

88. 1. Porsena nōn est Rōmānōrum amīcus. 2. Bona dea Rōmānīs[4] est amīca. 3. Posteā Trōiānī locum castrīs[5] idōneum dēligēbant. 4. Oppidum est magnae silvae propinquum. 5. Lēgātus Rōmānīs signum proeliī[6] celeriter dabit. 6. Magnō ē perīculō ā fīliō servābitur. 7. Multa tēla tum in castra mittēbantur.[7] 8. Rōmulus et Remus dē imperiō pugnābunt. 9. Rōmulus rēgnum obtinēbit. 10. Bellum ā Rōmulō multōs per annōs gerēbātur. 11. Alba Longa sub imperiō populī Rōmānī[8] est. 12. Alba Longa sub imperium populī Rōmānī venit.

---

[1] This noun is masculine in the singular, but usually neuter in the plural.
[2] Notice that this word may be either noun or adjective.
[3] Notice that **in** is used with the accusative to denote place to which, with the ablative to denote place where. The use of **sub** is similar.
[4] Dative, not ablative. [5] Dative, *for a camp.*
[6] *the signal for battle*, literally *of battle.*
[7] With **tēlum** and **pīlum**, **mittō** may be translated *hurl* or *throw.*
[8] When the two words **populus Rōmānus** are used together, they are always written in this order. Notice, too, that they are singular. There was only one *Roman people.*

89. Dative with Adjectives. — Observe that the datives in sentences 2, 3, and 4 modify adjectives, and notice carefully what adjectives take the dative.

90. 1. The flight of the Roman sailors will terrify the forces. 2. I shall not often call the Roman people to[1] arms. 3. The messenger is in the town. 4. The messenger comes into the town. 5. Porsena fortified the town with a wall and left a garrison there. 6. Ascanius is founding the town of Alba Longa. 7. She is friendly to the Trojans. 8. You will be called a friend of the Roman people. 9. He will show the plan to Labienus, the lieutenant. 10. A place suitable for a camp is chosen by the lieutenant. 11. Is the place near Alba? 12. In the camp of the Romans are many long javelins.

LESSON XII

91. Second Declension: Nouns in *er*, and *vir*

Learn the declension of **puer**, *boy;* **ager**, *field;* and **vir**, *man* (section 458).

Notice that the case-endings are the same as in the declension of nouns in **us**, except that the nominative singular does not have **us**. How does the declension of **ager** differ from that of **puer**?

92. Gender. — Nouns of the second declension ending in er are masculine.

93. First and Second Declensions: Adjectives in *er, a, um*

Learn the declension of **liber**, *free*, and **integer**, *fresh* (section 464).

[1] Use **ad**.

Notice that **integer** differs from **līber** in declension as **ager** from **puer**.

94. Vocabulary

ager, *field*; also *territory*. *agriculture*.
animus, *mind*; also *courage*. *magnanimous*.
Latīnī (pl.), *the Latins*, a people of Italy.
mātrimōnium, *marriage*. *matrimonial*.
puer, *boy*; **puerī** (pl.), *children*. *puerile*.
rīpa, *bank* (of a river).
vir, *man*. *virile*.
crēber, *frequent*, *numerous*.
integer, *unwearied*, *fresh*.
līber, *free*. *liberty*.
miser, *wretched*, *miserable*.
occīdō, **-ere**, *kill*.
cum, prep. with abl., *with*. [**conveniō**].
nam, conj., *for*.

Exercises

95. Decline **crēber** (like **integer**), **miser** (like **līber**).

96. 1. Posteā cum multīs Trōiānīs in Italiam pervenit. 2. Fīliō Ascanī fīliam in mātrimōnium dabō. 3. Aqua miserōs puerōs Rōmulum et Remum in rīpā relinquēbat. 4. Vir cōnsiliīs Rōmānōrum est nōn amīcus. 5. Scaevola Porsenam tēlō occīdere in animō habet. 6. Lēgātus cum magnīs cōpiīs ad oppidum Albam Longam mittitur. 7. Nam crēbrī nūntiī per agrum Rōmānum veniunt. 8. Sīc praesidium ex oppidō expellēbātur. 9. Tum signum proelī sub armīs exspectābātis. 10. Castra in propinquīs agrīs habēbitis. 11. Locus castrīs idōneus est. 12. Rōmānī cum Latīnīs saepe pugnābunt.

97. Ablative of Accompaniment. — Observe the use of the ablative with **cum** in sentences 1, 6, and 12.

98. 1. A free people chooses good men. 2. The miserable Latins are under the rule of the Roman people. 3. Afterward we carried on long wars with the Romans

through many years. 4. Fresh troops are being led into the battle. 5. The lieutenant will come to the camp with large forces. 6. The wretched women will remain in the town with the children. 7. I shall hold the throne with arms. 8. Ascanius will be called a good man.

LESSON XIII

99. Future Indicative, Third and Fourth Conjugations

Learn the future indicative, active and passive, of **regō** and **audiō** (section 490).

100. Tense-Sign. — Notice that the tense-sign of the future indicative in the third and fourth conjugations is **a** for the first person singular, **ē** (shortened in the usual places) elsewhere.

Exercises

101. Inflect **dēligō** and **perveniō** in the future indicative active, **occīdō** and **impediō** in the future indicative passive.

102. 1. obtinēbō, obtineō, obtinēbam. 2. condēbant, condent, condunt. 3. terrēbit, terrēbitur. 4. conditur, condētur. 5. mittēbāminī, servābor. 6. expellētis, expellēminī, terrēminī. 7. manēs, mūniēs, dūcam. 8. vidēbitur, occīdētur. 9. relinquēris, relinqueris, vulnerābere. 10. occīdēbantur, dēfendimur, superābimus.

103. 1. you were waited for, you are being saved. 2. we fortified, you saw. 3. it was being tried, we shall report. 4. you announced, they are waged. 5. you are showing, he did have. 6. I was advised, we do show. 7. you expel, you are being wounded. 8. we are impeded, we shall be wounded. 9. it is being destroyed, you will pre-

pare. 10. they will be moved, they are being moved. 11. we were sent, I am heard, I shall be seen.

104. Vocabulary

circumdō, -are,[1] *put around, surround.* [dō].
occupō, -āre, *seize.*
Graecī (pl.), *the Greeks.*
iniūria, *wrong, injury.*
iūstitia, *justice, uprightness.*
nātūra, *nature, character.*
novus, *new. novelty.*
parvus, *small, little.*
paucī, paucae, pauca (pl.), *a few. paucity.*
post, prep. with acc., *after.* [posteā].
-que, enclitic, *and.*

nōnne, adv., used to introduce a question to which an affirmative answer is expected, *not?* [nōn + -ne].

num, adv., used to introduce a question to which a negative answer is expected.

Exercises

105. 1. Post proelium Graecī ad oppidum cum captīvīs veniēbant. 2. Latīnī sunt miserī iniūriīs (*see section 106 below*). 3. Numa iūstitiā vocābātur bonus vir. 4. Nōnne integrās cōpiās exspectābimus? 5. Num[2] oppidum novō mūrō circumdabitis? 6. Paucī Trōiānī in Italiam pervenient. 7. Signum armīs dēfendēmus. 8. Rōmulus Remum occīdet rēgnumque[3] occupābit. 9. Nātūrā locī castra ibi habēmus. 10. Nam locus est rīpae propinquus castrīsque idōneus. 11. Nauta puerum amīcitiā monēbit.

106. Ablative of Cause or Reason. — In sentence 2 **iniūriīs** tells why the Latins are wretched, and is to be translated *on account of*

---

[1] See page 14, foot-note 1.

[2] **Num** cannot be translated by any single word. In English we show that a negative answer is expected by the tone in which the question is asked or by the form of the question: **num circumdabitis?** *you will not surround, will you?*

[3] **-que** is joined to the word it adds; if it adds a phrase or clause, it is usually joined to the first word of that phrase or clause. It must therefore be translated before the word to which it is joined.

their wrongs or *because of their wrongs*. Find other ablatives of cause or reason in the sentences above, and translate each in as many ways as you can.

107. 1. The prisoner is wretched on account of the danger of her son. 2. The little children were not frightened by the danger. 3. He has it[1] in mind to give his daughter in[2] marriage to his friend. 4. The Roman people seized the neighboring territory. 5. The nations of Italy are not free; for they are under the rule of the Romans. 6. He is not friendly to the Greeks, is he? 7. Is he not friendly to the Greeks? 8. He will be selected on account of his great influence. 9. The towns are many, but small.

LESSON XIV

108. The Irregular Verb *sum*. — Learn the present, past, and future indicative of **sum**, *be* (section 493).

109. Vocabulary

sum, esse,[3] *be. essence.*
ēducō, -āre, *bring up, rear. education.*
habitō, -āre, *dwell, live. habitable.*
inveniō, -īre, *find. inventory.*
moveō, -ēre, *move.*
captīvus,[4] *captive, prisoner.*
dīligentia, *diligence, industry.*
memoria, *memory.*
ēgre ius, *uncommon, remarkable. egregious.*
atque or **ac,**[5] conj., *and.*[6]
diū, adv., *long, a long time.*
quondam, adv., *once upon a time, formerly, once.*

---

[1] Omit.

[2] See section 96, sentence 2. Compare *in mind* and *in marriage* with reference to the force of *in*.

[3] This is the present infinitive.

[4] Notice that **captīva** denotes a female prisoner, **captīvus** a male.

[5] **Ac** is not used before words beginning with a vowel or **h**. Of what other words is this true?

[6] **Et** is the simplest and commonest of the words translated *and*; **-que** indicates a close connection; **atque (ac)** adds something of greater importance than that which precedes it.

Exercises

110. 1. Nam tum Numa, vir ēgregiae iūstitiae, rēgnābat. 2. Nam tum Numa, vir ēgregiā iūstitiā (*see 111*), rēgnābat. 3. Nōnne Graecī oppidum mūrō fossāque circumdabunt? 4. Nātūrā sumus līberī. 5. Iniūriae virōs līberōs ad bellum movent. 6. Quondam Rōmulus, vir magnī cōnsilī, in silvā habitābat. 7. Captīvī diū erunt in magnō perīculō. 8. Erās puer magnā diligentiā memoriāque. 9. Fīliam amīcī in mātrimōnium dūcēs.[1] 10. Posteā cum fīliō et fīliā ad lēgātum venit atque grātiam amīcitiamque petit. 11. Post victōriam ēgregiam lēgātus erat magnā grātiā[2] in Italiā. 12. Integrī atque bonō animō estis.

111. Descriptive Genitive and Ablative. — The ablative **ēgregiā iūstitiā** in sentence 2 modifies **vir** and describes Numa exactly as the genitive **ēgregiae iūstitiae** in sentence 1 does, and is to be translated in the same way. Find all the other examples of these constructions in the sentences above, and notice that an adjective is used in each.

112. 1. The boys will not be killed, but will be brought up on the river-bank where they were found. 2. With a few friends they will found Rome. 3. The Roman territory was increased by frequent wars. 4. The Latins will be of good courage. 5. The new lieutenant was a man[3] of great diligence. 6. He will come with large forces and will seize the town. 7. A good man is not moved by money, is he? 8. Once upon a time there[4] lived in a small town a man of uncommon[5] discretion. 9. We were wretched on account of the news. 10. You are a boy of remarkable memory.

---

[1] *lead into marriage*, i.e. *marry*.
[2] Put in *man* (*a man of great influence*).
[3] Omit; *was of great diligence*.
[4] Omit. Notice that this *there* does not denote place; for this reason **ibi** cannot be used.
[5] Adjectives in **ius** have **ii** in the masc. and neut. gen. sing., not **ī**.

ROMAN GIRL

LESSON XV

113. Demonstrative Pronouns: *hic, ille, iste.* — Learn the declension of **hic**, *this*, and **ille**, *that* (section 483).

Like **ille**, decline **iste**, *that* (*of yours*).

114. Use of *hic, ille, iste.* — **Hic** denotes that which is near the speaker in place, time, or thought; **ille**, that which is more remote. **Iste** is used of that which belongs to the person addressed.

The demonstrative pronouns may be used as adjectives: **haec sagitta**, *this arrow.*

115. Vocabulary

hic, *this.*
ille, *that.*
iste, *that of yours, that.*
adiungō, **-ere**, *join to, join, add. junction.*
claudō, **-ere**, *shut, close. exclude.*
deus, *god.* [**dea**].
Sabīnī (pl.), *the Sabines*, a people of Italy.
clārus, *famous, glorious.*
deinde, adv., *then*,[1] *next.*
propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*[2]
quidem, adv., *indeed.*
tamen, conj., *yet, nevertheless.*

Exercises

116. 1. Lupa ad illum locum properābit ubi sunt parvī puerī. 2. Rōmulus et Remus cum lupā in illā rīpā inveniēbantur. 3. Nōnne Latīnī hīs in locīs quondam habitābant? 4. Deinde Rōmulus novum oppidum condit Sabīnōsque ad populum Rōmānum adiungit. 5. Rōmānī quidem[3] Rōmulum vocābant deum. 6. Post Rōmulum Numa, vir ēgregiā iūstitiā, rēgnābat. 7. Numa ēgregiā iūstitiā[4] dēligitur. 8. Illud clārum imperium Rōmānum Rōmulus condēbat ac Numa

[1] Notice that **deinde** does not mean *then* in the sense of *at that time.* What word does mean this?
[2] In what other way may cause be expressed?
[3] **Quidem** follows the word it emphasizes. [4] Not descriptive ablative.

augēbat. 9. Iste ager est propinquus illī oppidō. 10. Num propter istās paucās iniūriās miser eris? 11. Hic est puer magnā dīligentiā, ille est puer bonā memoriā.

117. 1. We often hear about the character of those Greeks. 2. On account of this news he will leave the prisoners in the camp. 3. He ought to move the camp from this place. 4. We shall surround that camp of yours. 5. Next we shall seize that town and close the gates. 6. Those plans of yours are indeed good, yet not remarkable. 7. That people will not long remain free. 8. These boys were brought up in the forest, those in the town.

LESSON XVI

118. Perfect Indicative Active. — Learn the perfect indicative active of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **sum** (sections 489, 490, 493).

119. Personal Endings. — The personal endings in the perfect indicative active are not the same as in the other tenses: —

ī, *I.*	**imus**, *we.*
istī, *you* (singular).	**istis**, *you* (plural).
it, *he, she,* or *it.*	**ērunt** or **ēre**, *they.*

120. Uses of the Perfect. — The Latin perfect has two uses: —

1. It may represent an action as already completed at the time of speaking: **monuī**, *I have advised.* In this use it corresponds to the English present perfect tense, and may be called present perfect.

2. It may merely represent a past action: **monuī**, *I advised* or *I did advise.* In this use it corresponds to the English past tense, and may be called past absolute.

Distinguish carefully between the past absolute use of the perfect tense and the past tense, which also may often be translated by the English past. The past tense in Latin describes a past action as going on, and may be called past descriptive; in the past absolute use the perfect simply states a past action as a fact: **monēbam**, *I advised* (*i.e.* I was giving the advice at the time); **monuī**, *I advised* (*i.e.* I once gave the advice).

121. Vocabulary

appellō, **-āre**, *call, name*. ***appellation***.
creō,[1] **-āre**, *make, elect*. ***creature***.
expugnō, **-āre**, *take by assault, capture*. [**ex** + **pugnō**].
auxilium, *aid*. [**augeō**].
decemvirī (pl.), *decemvirs*, a board, or commission, of ten men.
numerus, *number*. ***numerous***.
tribūnus, *tribune*, a Roman magistrate.
ab or **ā**,[2] prep. with abl., *away from, from*.[3] ***avocation***.
aut, conj., *or*.
itaque, conj., *and so, therefore*. [**-que**].
semper, adv., *always*.
tandem, adv., *at last, finally*.

Exercises

122. 1. Hanc ēgregiam victōriam Sabīnī ex captīvīs audīvērunt. 2. Numa nōn deus erat, tamen ā deā Ēgeriā amābātur. 3. Propter iūstitiam Numa semper erat magnā grātiā. 4. Hoc adiungam: sub rēgnō Numae bellum nōn gerēbātur. 5. Haec oppida auxilium ā Rōmānīs petunt, sed tamen ā Porsenā celeriter expugnābuntur. 6. Tribūnī ā Rōmānīs creābantur. 7. Hī tribūnī quondam virōs miserōs ab iniūriā dēfendēbant. 8. Magna quidem fuit dīligentia

[1] Notice that this verb, though it ends in **eō**, is not of the second conjugation.
[2] This is the same word that is translated *by* when used with the ablative of agent.
[3] Notice that **ab** means *from* in the sense of *away from*, while **ex** means *from* in the sense of *out of*.

illōrum tribūnōrum. 9. Tandem clārī virī dēliguntur atque ē numerō appellantur decemvirī. 10. Itaque hīs iniūriīs decemvirōs occīdētis aut expellētis ac portās claudētis. 11. Rōmānī cum magnō captīvōrum numerō ā rīpā veniunt.

123. 1. I have warned this lieutenant, for I am a friend of the Roman people. 2. Next I warned that lieutenant, for I was a friend of the Roman people. 3. You are moved by the memory of this friendship. 4. You don't live in that little town, do you? 5. I shall not remain there long, for I shall be made tribune. 6. He is a man of great courage and will take the town by assault. 7. Finally we seek aid from the Romans. 8. A large number of these weapons will be found; they are called javelins. 9. Those boys were being brought up by a good woman. 10. That friend of yours is always found in this place.

LESSON XVII

124. Perfect Indicative Passive. — Learn the perfect indicative passive of **amō, moneō, regō,** and **audiō** (sections 489, 490).

The perfect passive of a Latin verb is made up of its perfect passive participle and the present of **sum**. The perfect participle is declined like **bonus**, and agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case: **audītus est,** *he was heard;* **audīta est,** *she was heard;* **audītum est,** *it was heard;* **audītī sunt, audītae sunt, audīta sunt** *they were heard.*

125. Principal Parts. — Before the full conjugation of a verb can be given, it is necessary to know its present indicative active, present infinitive active, perfect indicative active, and perfect passive participle. From their importance these are called the principal parts of the verb.

The principal parts of all verbs that have been used in previous lessons must now be committed to memory: —

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	PERF. PART.	
		I		
amō	amāre	amāvī	amātum[1]	*love*
creō	creāre	creāvī	creātum	*make*

So all regular verbs of the first conjugation, but: —

dō	dare	dedī	datum	*give*
circumdō	circumdare	circumdedī	circumdatum	*put around*
		II		
moneō	monēre	monuī	monitum	*advise*
dēbeō	dēbēre	dēbuī	dēbitum	*owe*
habeō	habēre	habuī	habitum	*have*
terreō	terrēre	terruī	territum	*frighten*
obtineō	obtinēre	obtinuī	obtentum	*hold*
dēleō	dēlēre	dēlēvī	dēlētum	*destroy*
augeō	augēre	auxī	auctum	*increase*
maneō	manēre	mānsī	mānsum	*remain*
moveō	movēre	mōvī	mōtum	*move*
videō	vidēre	vīdī	vīsum	*see*
		III		
regō	regere	rēxī	rēctum	*guide*
adiungō	adiungere	adiūnxī	adiūnctum	*join to*
dūcō	dūcere	dūxī	ductum	*lead*
gerō	gerere	gessī	gestum	*carry on*
claudō	claudere	clausī	clausum	*shut*
mittō	mittere	mīsī	missum	*send*
dēligō	dēligere	dēlēgī	dēlēctum	*choose*
relinquō	relinquere	relīquī	relictum	*leave*
dēfendō	dēfendere	dēfendī	dēfēnsum	*defend*
incendō	incendere	incendī	incēnsum	*burn*
condō	condere	condidī	conditum	*found*
expellō	expellere	expulī	expulsum	*drive out*
occīdō	occīdere	occīdī	occīsum	*kill*
petō	petere	petīvī *or* petiī	petītum	*seek*

[1] Neuter nominative singular.

IV

audiō	**audīre**	**audīvī**	**audītum**	*hear*
impediō	**impedīre**	**impedīvī**	**impedītum**	*check*
mūniō	**mūnīre**	**mūnīvī**	**mūnītum**	*fortify*
veniō	**venīre**	**vēnī**	**ventum**	*come*

So **conveniō**, **inveniō**, **perveniō**.

reperiō	**reperīre**	**repperī**	**repertum**	*find*

Exercises

126. Inflect in the perfect indicative active **dō**, **videō**, **dēfendō**, and **reperiō**; in the perfect indicative passive **creō**, **dēleō**, **petō**, and **reperiō**.

127. 1. venit, vēnit. 2. missa est, missa sunt. 3. appropinquātis, appropinquāvistis. 4. movēbunt, mōvērunt. 5. dēlēbit, dēlēvit. 6. creābimus, creāvimus. 7. circumdatum est, servātum est. 8. relinquit, reliquit. 9. monēre, monēbere. 10. dēfendere, dēfendēre. 11. incendunt, incendit. 12. incendērunt, incendit. 13. dēfenditis, dēfendistis. 14. habuistis, habuistī. 15. amāris, amābāris. 16. vīsus est, vīsum est, vīsa est. 17. obtinētur, claudētur. 18. expellent, expellentur. 19. vident, videntur. 20. mittis, venīs.

128. 1. she is finding, she was finding, she will find, she has found. 2. she is found, she was found, she will be found, she has been found. 3. you do found, you did found, you will found, you have founded. 4. it is being founded, it was being founded, it will be founded, it has been founded. 5. they have given, it has been given. 6. he came, he saw. 7. I have had, they were checked. 8. you have assembled, he has been conquered. 9. we have remained, you have moved away. 10. I have sent, I have been sent. 11. we have sought, we have fortified. 12. he has increased, it has

been increased. 13. you have been chosen, they have been left. 14. it has been reported, they have arrived. 15. they have been killed, he has captured.

THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME

Latīnus[1] quondam in Italiā rēgnābat. Tum Trōia ā Graecīs oppugnābātur. Tandem dēlēta est, atque Aenēās cum multīs Trōiānīs ex patriā in Italiam pervēnit. Huic virō Latīnus Lāvīniam fīliam in mātrimōnium dedit. Aenēās oppidum in Italiā condidit. Hoc oppidum Lāvīnium ā Lāvīniā appellāvit. Ascanius, Aenēae[2] fīlius, Albam Longam condidit.

Posteā vir bonus in Albā rēgnābat. Hic vir ēgregiam fīliam, Rhēam Silviam, habēbat. Rōmulus et Remus fuērunt fīliī Rhēae Silviae. Amūlius rēgnum occupāvit ac puerōs in aquam mīsit.[3] Nam puerōs occīdere in animō habēbat. Sed aqua Rōmulum Remumque in rīpā relīquit. Lupa parvōs puerōs audīvit atque ad illum locum properāvit ubi erant. Saepe lupa veniēbat. Tum Faustulus, vir bonus, in locō huic rīpae propinquō habitābat. Itaque lupam vīdit et puerōs invēnit. Rōmulus et Remus ā clārā fēminā ēducātī sunt. Posteā propter iniūriās Amūlium occīdērunt. Deinde oppidum condidērunt in illō locō ubi ā Faustulō inventī sunt. Rōmulus novum oppidum Rōmam appellāvit. Sabīnōs ad populum Rōmānum adiūnxit multaque oppida expugnāvit. Tandem occīsus est. Sed Rōmānī Rōmulum deum appellābant.

Tum rēgnāvit Numa Pompilius, vir magnā iūstitiā. Numam Rōmānī ex oppidō Sabīnōrum vocāvērunt. Bellum

---

[1] Proper nouns and adjectives are given in the Latin-English vocabulary in the latter part of the book only when they are likely to cause difficulty.

[2] Genitive.

[3] *threw.*

quidem nōn gessit, tamen imperium Rōmānum auxit. Nam ā deā Ēgeriā amābātur. Post Numam Tullus Hostīlius rēgnum obtinuit. Bellum saepe parābat. Multa oppida superāvit atque Albam Longam dēlēvit. Haec bella fuērunt multa et clāra. Deinde Ancus Mārcius imperium obtinuit et cum Latīnīs pugnāvit.

L.[1] Tarquinius Prīscus ex Etrūriā dēmigrāvit et in agrum Rōmānum vēnit. Amīcitiam Ancī petiit, sed posteā per īnsidiās fīliōs Ancī ex oppidō mīsit rēgnumque sīc occupāvit. Multa bella gessit et multōrum oppidōrum agrōs ad imperium Rōmānum adiūnxit. Hunc Tarquinium Ancī fīliī occīdērunt. Tum Servius Tullius, fīlius captīvae, rēgnum obtinuit. Hic vir Tarquinī fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxit. Servius Rōmam fossīs et novō mūrō circumdedit. Ā fīliā nōn amābātur, atque ab hāc fēminā et L. Tarquiniō Superbō, Prīscī fīliō, occīsus est. Deinde hic L. Tarquinius Superbus rēgnum occupāvit. Multōs populōs bellō superāvit. Tarquiniōs tandem propter multās iniūriās Rōmānī ex oppidō expulērunt portāsque clausērunt.

LESSON XVIII

129. Demonstrative Pronouns: *is* and *īdem*. — Learn the declension of **is**, *this* or *that*, and **īdem**, *the same* (section 483).

Īdem is only **is** with **dem** added. Notice, however, that the masculine nominative singular is **īdem** instead of **isdem**; that the neuter nominative and accusative singular is **idem**, not **iddem**; that **m** is changed to **n** before **d** in the accusative singular and genitive plural; and that the masculine nominative plural and the dative and ablative plural of **is** are best spelled **iī**, **iīs**, while **īdem** has a single **ī** in these cases.

[1] The abbreviation for **Lūcius**.

130. Use of *is*. — **Is** may denote any person or thing mentioned, and is therefore less definite than **hic** and **ille**: **hic puer**, *this boy* (here); **ille puer**, *that boy* (there); **is puer**, *this boy* **or** *that boy* (of whom I am speaking).

131. Vocabulary

is, *this, that.*
īdem, *the same. identical.*
Gallī (pl.), *the Gauls*, a people.
parātus, *prepared, ready.* [**parō**].
hīc, adv., *here.* [**hic**].
neque or **nec**, conj., *and not, nor.*

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus,[1] *be cut off, be without, lack.*
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum, *cease, give up.*
excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum, *go out, withdraw.* ***antecedent.***
līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātum, *set free, free.* [**līber**].
prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum, *keep, prevent.* ***prohibition.***

Exercises

132. 1. Itaque Rōmulus ā Rōmānīs deus appellābātur. 2. Parātus eram hīc manēre cum parvō numerō amīcōrum. 3. Oppidum est expugnātum,[2] ēiusque oppidī ager ad imperium Rōmānum est adiūnctus. 4. Gallī Rōmam occupāvērunt, ac posteā cum magnā praedā ex eō oppidō excessērunt. 5. Tandem Italia illō perīculō (*see 133*) līberāta est. 6. Gallī oppidō excessērunt. 7. Rōmānī ā fugā dēstitērunt, Gallōsque ex agrō Rōmānō expulērunt. 8. Rōmānī fugā dēstitērunt, Gallōsque agrō Rōmānō expulērunt. 9. Tamen in eō perīculō nōn caruimus auxiliō deōrum. 10. Rōmānī Gallōs ab Italiā prohibēbunt. 11. Rōmānī Gallōs Italiā prohibēbunt. 12. Eōdem animō semper erō, neque propter istud perīculum bellō dēsistam. 13. Deinde lēgātī oppidō expulsī sunt et portae clausae sunt.

[1] This is the future active participle. **Careō** has no perfect participle.
[2] This is the same as **expugnātum est**. The forms of **sum** are often put before the perfect participle.

133. Ablative of Separation. — In sentence 5 **illō perīculō** means *from that danger*. Notice that no preposition is used for *from*. The idea of separation is often expressed by the ablative without a preposition, regularly so with **careō** and **līberō**. Find other ablatives of separation in the sentences above, and observe the use and the omission of prepositions.

134. 1. At that time indeed the Romans ceased to elect tribunes. 2. That friend of yours lacks money. 3. After that battle Romans and Sabines lived in the same town. 4. These famous men freed their fatherland from the rule of the decemvirs. 5. I was without influence; and so I was not made tribune. 6. They are prepared to withdraw from the town, nor will they be prevented by the lieutenant. 7. We have captured this camp, and here we shall remain. 8. Then those prisoners were set free or killed.

LESSON XIX

135. Past Perfect Indicative. — Learn the past perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, and **audiō** (sections 489, 490); and the past perfect indicative of **sum** (section 493).

Notice that the past perfect active is formed as if by adding the past of **sum** to the perfect stem, and that the past perfect passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the past of **sum**.

136. Vocabulary

elephantus, *elephant*.
Pyrrhus, *Pyrrhus*, king of Epirus.
sententia, *opinion*, *view*. *consent*.
anteā, adv., *before*, *previously*. *antepenult*.
apud, prep. with acc., *among*, *with*.

dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum, *be hopeless, despair.*
fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, *put to flight, rout.* [**fuga**].
revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum, *call back,*[1] *recall.* [**vocō**].
timeō, timēre, timuī,[2] *fear, be anxious. timid.*
vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *defeat.* [**victōria**].

Exercises

137. Inflect in the past perfect indicative active **dō, dēleō, relinquō,** and **veniō**; in the past perfect indicative passive **creō, moveō, expellō,** and **reperiō.**

138. 1. Tribūnus creātus eram; nam eram magnā grātiā apud hunc populum. 2. Numerus tribūnōrum anteā auctus erat. 3. Tum parātī erāmus eō locō excēdere. 4. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs auxiliō elephantōrum vīcerat. 5. Rōmānī elephantōs Pyrrhī vulnerāverant. 6. Decemvirī cōpiīs armīsque carēbant et dē victōriā dēspērābant. 7. Hanc sententiam semper habuī, neque hāc sententiā dēsistam. 8. Istā sententiā[3] ex patriā expulsus erās, sed posteā revocātus es. 9. Oppida expugnāverātis, praesidiaque expulerātis aut occīderātis. 10. Apud Rōmānōs Rōmulus appellātus erat deus.

139. 1. The Gauls had always been men[4] of great courage. 2. Yet the Romans had here defeated and routed the same Gauls before. 3. The ambassador lacked influence; and so he had been recalled. 4. Then we hastened to come into Italy, but were prevented. 5. I was hopeless about this plan. 6. You had not ceased to fear the Romans. 7. At last I have freed my country from these perils. 8. I am anxious about that boy, for he is without friends.

---

[1] Notice that *back* is the meaning of the prefix **re-**.
[2] **Timeō** has neither perfect passive nor future active participle.
[3] See section 106. [4] Omit.

LESSON XX

140. Relative Pronoun. — Learn the declension of **quī**, *who, which, that* (section 485).

141. Vocabulary

quī, *who, which, that*.
equus, *horse*. *equine*.
frūmentum, *grain*.
socius, *ally*. *social*.
autem, conj., *however*.
subitō, adv., *suddenly*.

comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum, *seize, arrest*. *comprehension*.
conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum, *win over*. *reconciliation*.
renovō, renovāre, renovāvī, renovātum, *renew*. [**novus**].
scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write*. *postscript*.

Exercises

142. 1. Rōmulus oppidum hīc condidit, quod Rōmam appellāvit. 2. Ad Pyrrhum ea[1] scrīpsī quae audīveram. 3. Rōmānī eōs elephantōs timēbant quōs Pyrrhus habēbat quōrumque auxiliō eāsdem cōpiās anteā vīcerat et fugāverat. 4. Eōs populōs autem, quī Rōmānīs amīcī fuerant, lēgātus conciliāre bellōque prohibēre temptābat. 5. Neque renovābō eam amīcitiam quā tum dēstitī. 6. Rōmānī dēspērābant dē eō frūmentō quod ā sociīs missum erat. 7. Hic vir est īdem quī patriam līberāvit. 8. Magnum numerum equōrum, quī relictī erant in castrīs Gallōrum, comprehendērunt. 9. Ea quae apud Gallōs gerēbantur nūntiāvit.

143. Agreement of Relative Pronoun. — Notice that the relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but that it is not necessarily in the same case as the antecedent. Determine the case of the relative in each of the sentences above, and the reason why that case is used.

---

[1] Neut. pl., *those (things)*.

144. 1. He reported the same things that we had often heard before. 2. He wrote to Pyrrhus about those[1] towns that were without a garrison. 3. With a few horses which they had seized they quickly withdrew from the camp. 4. Those ambassadors to whom the allies had given money were suddenly recalled and arrested.[2] 5. I have the same opinion about this man that I have always had. 6. The grain that the Romans were waiting for had been destroyed by the allies. 7. The Romans, however,[3] were prepared to win over the allies and renew the war.

ROMULUS

LESSON XXI

145. Interrogative Pronoun. — The interrogative pronoun **quis**, *who? which? what?* is declined like the relative pronoun **quī**, except that it has two forms, **quis** and **quī**, for the masculine nominative singular, and two, **quid** and **quod**, for the neuter nominative and accusative singular (section 486).

The interrogative pronoun may be used as an adjective (except the forms **quis** and **quid**); the forms **quī** and **quod** and the feminine singular are regularly used only as adjectives: **quis**? *who?* **quī vir**? *what man?* **quae fēmina**? *what woman?* **quid**? *what?* **quod oppidum**? *what town?*

[1] The demonstrative *that, those*, when used merely to introduce the relative, is to be rendered by **is**, not **ille**.

[2] **revocātī et comprehēnsī sunt.** As in English, the auxiliary is expressed with only one of the verbs.

[3] **Autem** cannot stand first in a sentence or clause.

146. Vocabulary

quis, *who? which? what?*
barbarus, *barbarian.*
conloquium, *conference. colloquial.*
litterae (pl.), *despatch, letter.*
contrā, prep. with acc., *against. contradict.*
prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before; in place of, for. pronoun.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect;* also *compel. cogent.*
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say, speak. contradict.*
postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum, *demand.*
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask, inquire.*

Exercises

147. 1. Barbarī in conloquiō contrā imperium Rōmānum dīxērunt. 2. Lēgātus autem iīs cōpiīs quās subitō coēgerat Gallōs vīcit et fugāvit. 3. Quae cōpiae prō castrīs relictae sunt? 4. Sociōs coēgit id frūmentum mittere quod anteā postulāverat. 5. Quid prō frūmentō dabō? 6. Quōs populōs illī lēgātī Rōmānōrum conciliāvērunt? 7. Quod oppidum Rōmulus condidit? 8. Quid in iīs litterīs quās ad Pyrrhum mīsistī dē illīs elephantīs scrīpserās? 9. Eādem in sententiā maneō in quā semper fuī. 10. Num dē hōc cōnsiliō dēspērās? 11. Quis fuit ille vir quī quidem patriā expulsus est, sed posteā revocātus est? 12. Quī amīcus amīcum nōn amat?

148. 1. Tribunes, however, were elected in place of the decemvirs, who were then arrested. 2. Whom do you fear? 3. Against whose rule was the war waged? 4. What nations renewed their friendship with the Romans? 5. Did the barbarians demand the same things about which we had spoken in the conference? 6. About whose character did you inquire? 7. Frequent despatches had been sent concerning those troops that were being collected among the Gauls. 8. Which horse was selected?

LESSON XXII

149. Future Perfect Indicative. — Learn the future perfect indicative, active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō,** and **audiō** (sections 489, 490); and the future perfect indicative of **sum** (section 493).

Notice that the future perfect active is formed as if by adding the future of **sum** to the perfect stem, and that the future perfect passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the future of **sum.** But the third person plural in the active ends in **erint,** not **erunt.**

Exercises

150. Inflect in the future perfect active **vocō, dēleō, condō,** and **veniō**; in the future perfect passive **creō, videō, vincō,** and **reperiō.**

151. 1. erō, revocāverō, revocātus erō. 2. erās, prohibuerās, prohibitus erās. 3. dederat, līberat. 4. vēnerit, reperit. 5. repperit, reppererit. 6. mōverātis, dēspērātis. 7. vīderitis, quaeritis. 8. vīcērunt, victī erunt. 9. mōverint, mōvērunt. 10. erunt, fuerint. 11. vidēris, vīderis, vidēberis. 12. dēfenderis,[1] dēfendēris.

152. 1. I shall have, I shall have been. 2. he had been, he had. 3. we had ceased, we had had. 4. we shall have written, we had written. 5. he had come, they had been defeated. 6. they will have been, they will have been set free. 7. you will have reigned, you will have been frightened. 8. you are excelling, you will have excelled. 9. she had been sent, it will have been surrounded.

---

[1] Translate this in two ways.

153. Vocabulary

servus, *slave*. **servile**.
supplicium, *punishment, penalty*.
reliquus, adj., *the remaining, the rest of*. [relinquō].
ad,[1] prep. with acc., *near, at*.
sī, conj., *if*.
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except*.
sine, prep. with abl., *without*.
armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum, *arm*. [**arma**].
cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum, *consider*; also *intend*. ***cogitation***.
cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum, *station, fix, determine*. ***constitution***.

Exercises

154. 1. Cōgitāmus eōs servōs armāre quōs conciliāverimus. 2. Sī reliquae cōpiae coāctae erunt, bellum contrā barbarōs sine magnō perīculō renovābimus. 3. Prō hīs iniūriis supplicium cōnstituēmus. 4. Quis eās litterās vidēbit quās scrīpserimus? 5. In hōc conloquiō dē litterīs quaesīvī. 6. Quod cōnsilium cōgitās? 7. Nisi idōneum equum reppererō, hīc manēbō. 8. Sī conloquium petent, nōn sine perīculō veniētis. 9. Nōn veniēmus nisi cum praesidiō.

155. Future Tenses in Subordinate Clauses. — Notice that in sentence 7 **reppererō**, *I shall have found*, may be translated *I find*. When both the principal and the subordinate verb represent future actions, English regularly uses the present in the subordinate clause, but Latin requires the more exact future or future perfect.

156. 1. Unless you prevent,[2] they will arm the slaves. 2. Then they will demand aid from[3] their allies. 3. The rest of the slaves were suddenly arrested at the gate. 4. If, however, the barbarians burn[2] the grain, where shall you station the troops? 5. The place which had been selected

---

[1] This is the same word that is translated *to* when used with a verb expressing motion.
[2] See section 155. [3] **ab**.

was near Rome. 6. The remaining troops were quickly collected. 7. We have determined to wage war with the Gauls. 8. They are said to have a great number of horses.

LESSON XXIII

157. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*

	hiems *winter*	**cōnsul** *consul*	**arbor** *tree*	
		SINGULAR		ENDINGS
NOM.	hiem**s**	cōnsul	arbor	**s** *or none*
GEN.	hiem**is**	cōnsul**is**	arbor**is**	**is**
DAT.	hiem**ī**	cōnsul**ī**	arbor**ī**	**ī**
ACC.	hiem**em**	cōnsul**em**	arbor**em**	**em**
ABL.	hiem**e**	cōnsul**e**	arbor**e**	**e**
		PLURAL		
NOM.	hiem**ēs**	cōnsul**ēs**	arbor**ēs**	**ēs**
GEN.	hiem**um**	cōnsul**um**	arbor**um**	**um**
DAT.	hiem**ibus**	cōnsul**ibus**	arbor**ibus**	**ibus**
ACC.	hiem**ēs**	cōnsul**ēs**	arbor**ēs**	**ēs**
ABL.	hiem**ibus**	cōnsul**ibus**	arbor**ibus**	**ibus**

158. Case-Endings. — Notice that in this declension also, as in the first and the second, the dative and the ablative plural have the same ending. This is true of all declensions.

What is the ending of these cases in the first and second declensions?

159. Gender. — Nouns of all three genders are found in the third declension, and the gender of any noun of this declension must be learned with the noun.

160. Vocabulary

agger, m., *agger*, a mound used in military operations.
arbor, f., *tree*.
carcer, m., *prison. incarcerate*.
cōnsul, m., *consul*, chief magistrate of Rome.
Hannibal, m., *Hannibal*, a famous Carthaginian general.
hiems, f., *winter*.
mulier, f., *woman*.
dum, conj., *while*.
iterum, adv., *again, a second time. reiterate*.
prīmus, adj., *first*. [**prō**].

Exercises

161. Like **arbor**, decline **agger**, **carcer**, and **mulier**.

162. 1. Dum illī prīmī cōnsulēs imperium obtinent (*see 163*), bellum contrā Rōmānōs gessit. 2. Tandem iī servī, quī in carcere per hiemem mānserant, līberātī sunt. 3. Quid in conloquiō dē illīs mulieribus dictum est? 4. Dum haec[1] in oppidō geruntur, Rōmānī aggerem parāvērunt. 5. Tandem propter magnum perīculum puerōs mulierēsque armāre cōnstituērunt. 6. Sī hāc in silvā cōpiās cōnstitueris, hīs magnīs arboribus dēfendentur. 7. Illās litterās ā cōnsule iterum postulat. 8. Dum reliquae[2] Hannibalis cōpiae cōguntur, hiems appropinquābat. 9. Dum in carcere sum, dē suppliciō saepe quaesīvī. 10. Tribūnī prō cōnsulibus creātī sunt.

163. Present Indicative with *dum*. — The present indicative is used with **dum**, *while*, even when a past action is represented; it must then be translated by the past.

164. 1. Whose troops will remain near the town? 2. You will not capture the first town without an agger. 3. What town of Italy did Hannibal attack? 4. This is the town

[1] Compare **ea**, section 142, sentence 2.

[2] See section 82.

which Hannibal attacked. 5. The trees about which you inquire are in front of the prison. 6. We intend to remain under this tree. 7. While these things were going on,[1] the Romans seized the camp of the Gauls with the women[2] and children. 8. The despatch announced the victory of the consuls. 9. While the consul was hastening into Italy, the lieutenant defeated the barbarians a second time. 10. Unless you come[3] without arms, they will not remain in the conference.

ROMAN JAVELINS

LESSON XXIV

165. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um* (*continued*)

Learn the declension of **dux**, *leader;* **rēx**, *king;* **palūs**, *swamp;* and **virtūs**, *bravery* (section 459).

Notice that final **c** and **g** of the stem unite with the ending **s** to form **x** in the nominative singular and that final **d** and **t** of the stem are dropped before **s**.

166. Learn the declension of **centuriō**, *centurion;* **homō**, *man;* **miles**, *soldier;* and **pater**, *father* (section 459).

Notice that the stem does not clearly appear in the nominative singular of these words. It is necessary, therefore, to learn not only the nominative singular and the gender of third-declension nouns, but their genitive singular as well.

---

[1] Compare section 162, sentence 4.

[2] Notice how *women and children* is expressed in section 162, sentence 5.

[3] See section 155.

167. Vocabulary

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., *centurion*, a Roman military officer.
dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander*. [dūcō].
homō, hominis, m. and f., *human being, man*. *homicide*.
lēx, lēgis, f., *law*. *legal*.
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier*. *military*.
palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp, marsh*.
pater, patris, m., *father*; **patrēs** (pl.), *senators*. *paternal*.
pāx, pācis, f., *peace*. *pacify*.
rēx, rēgis, m., *king*. [regō].
sēditiō, sēditiōnis, f., *sedition, insurrection*.
suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f., *suspicion*.
virtūs, virtūtis, f., *bravery, valor*. [vir].
postquam, conj., *after*. [post].
ubi,[1] conj., *when*.

Exercises

168. 1. Rēx expulsus est, cūius in locum cōnsulēs creātī sunt. 2. Ubi servī comprehēnsī sunt, nōn in carcerem sed ad supplicium ductī sunt. 3. Ubi hoc proelium lēgātō nūntiātum est, castra movēre cōnstituit. 4. Oppidum aggere oppugnāre cōgitābāmus. 5. Hīc fuerant crēbrae arborēs. 6. Itaque centuriōnēs idōneōs hominēs dēlēgerint. 7. Ubi lēgātus appropinquāvit, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt. 8. Dum cōnsul reliquōs mīlitēs armat, Hannibal cōpiās per palūdēs dūxit. 9. Nam Hannibal fuit magnī cōnsilī et virtūtis. 10. Postquam miserī hominēs sēditiōnem mōvērunt,[2] patrēs pācem iterum petiērunt. 11. Tum iniūriae et suspīciōnēs populum incendēbant. 12. Hae lēgēs anteā ā decemvirīs scrīptae erant.

169. Perfect Indicative with *postquam* and *ubi*. — Notice that the perfect indicative is used with **postquam** and **ubi** in clauses expressing time. In this use it may often be translated by the past perfect.

---

[1] This is the same word that has already been given as an adverb meaning *where*.
[2] *stirred up*.

BRUTUS

170. 1. After the king had been driven out, consuls were elected. 2. Unless winter prevents,[1] I shall come. 3. When the first news came, the commander gave up his plan.[2] 4. The centurion was arrested by the commander on account of a suspicion of insurrection. 5. When winter came, the soldiers remained near the marshes without great danger. 6. Among the Gauls the women are of remarkable bravery. 7. After the men[3] had been killed, the women defended the camp from the Romans. 8. If the senators give the new laws which we demand, there will be peace and friendship in place of suspicion and sedition.

THE EARLY REPUBLIC

Postquam Tarquiniī expulsī sunt, cōnsulēs prō rēgibus creātī sunt, L. Iūnius Brūtus et L. Tarquinius Collātīnus. Collātīnus autem in suspiciōnem vēnit. Nam appellābātur Tarquinius. Itaque Rōmānī hunc virum expulērunt, cūius in locum P.[4] Valerius Pūblicola cōnsul creātus est. Brūtus in bellō ā fīliō L. Tarquinī Superbī occīsus est. Pater patriae appellārī dēbet.

Posteā propter multās patrum iniūriās sēditiō mōta est. Multī mīlitēs ex oppidō excessērunt atque castra aggere fossāque mūnīvērunt. Hīc diū mānsērunt. Patrēs terrēbantur; nam sine iīs quī excesserant bella gerere nōn parātī erant. Itaque pācem petiērunt et plēbem[5] sīc conciliāvērunt: tribūnī sunt creātī, quī plēbem ab iniūriīs patrum dēfendēbant.

Tamen multae iniūriae mānsērunt. Tandem clārī virī sunt dēlēctī, quī appellābantur decemvirī, in[6] hīs Appius Claudius.

---

[1] See section 155. [2] See section 132, sentence 12.
[3] **Vir**, not **homō**, is used for *man* as distinguished from *woman*.
[4] The abbreviation for **Pūblius**.
[5] **plēbs, plēbis**, f., *the common people, the plebeians*. [6] *among*.

Imperium prō cōnsulibus obtinēbant et lēgēs scrīpsērunt. Appius Claudius Vergīniam, fīliam centuriōnis, amābat ac per īnsidiās comprehendere[1] cōgitābat. Fīliam pater occīdit; tum mīlitēs ad sēditiōnem mōvit. Sīc decemvirī sunt expulsī.

M.[2] Fūrius Camillus, quī Vēiōs[3] expugnāverat, propter suspīciōnēs patriā expulsus est. Posteā tamen patriam servāvit. Nam Gallōs, quōs Rōmānī semper timēbant, bellō superāvit Gallī cōpiās Rōmānōrum ad Alliam vīcerant et Rōmam occupāverant. Tum subitō Camillus, quī in patriam revocātus erat, magnīs cum cōpiīs ad oppidum pervēnit. Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcit et dēlēvit.

Erant in Italiā multa Graecōrum oppida, quae imperium populī Rōmānī timēbant. Haec oppida ā Pyrrhō, rēge Ēpīrī, auxilium petiērunt, quī in Italiam cum magnīs cōpiīs elephantīsque multīs vēnit. Contrā hunc rēgem missus est P. Valerius Laevīnus cōnsul. Pyrrhus Rōmānōs elephantīs vīcit. Tamen Rōmānī nōn dēspērāvērunt neque pācem petiērunt. Lēgātōs dē captīvīs ad rēgem mīsērunt, in hīs C.[4] Fabricium. Hunc clārum virum Pyrrhus pecūniā temptāvit. Fabricius autem nōn mōtus est; nam erat magnae iūstitiae. Bellum est renovātum et multōs per annōs gestum. Rōmānī quidem prō patriā pugnābant. Tandem rēgem superāvērunt atque ex Italiā expulērunt.

---

[1] **Vergīniam** is the object of this verb as well as of **amābat**, but we must say in English *to seize her*.

[2] The abbreviation for **Mārcus**.

[3] Many names of towns are plural in Latin.

[4] The abbreviation for **Gāius**.

LESSON XXV

171. Third Declension : Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*

	nōmen *name*	**genus** *race*	ENDINGS
		SINGULAR	
NOM.	nōmen	genus	*none*
GEN.	nōmin**is**	gener**is**	**is**
DAT.	nōmin**ī**	gener**ī**	**ī**
ACC.	nōmen	genus	*none*
ABL.	nōmin**e**	gener**e**	**e**
		PLURAL	
NOM.	nōmin**a**	gener**a**	**a**
GEN.	nōmin**um**	gener**um**	**um**
DAT.	nōmin**ibus**	gener**ibus**	**ibus**
ACC.	nōmin**a**	gener**a**	**a**
ABL.	nōmin**ibus**	gener**ibus**	**ibus**

172. Vocabulary

corpus, corporis, n., *body.* *incorporate.*
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river.* *fluid.*
genus, generis, n., *race;* also *kind.* *general.*
iter, itineris, n., *march;* also *route.* *itinerary.*
magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., *greatness, size.* [**magnus**].
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.* *nominative.*
opus, operis, n., *work.* *coöperate.*
potestās, potestātis, f., *power.* *potent.*
et . . . et, *both . . . and.*

Exercises

173. Decline **corpus, flūmen, iter,** and **opus.**

174. 1. Rōmulus fuit magnus et in bellō et in pāce. 2. Gallī Rōmānōs magnitūdine (*see 175*) corporum superant.

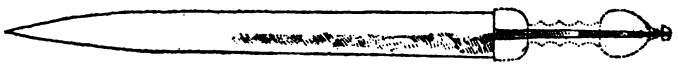
3. Hannibal dum[1] apud rēgem est, in suspīciōnem **vēnit.** 4. Postquam mīlitēs ad flūmen pervēnērunt, fugā dēstitērunt. 5. Hoc oppidum Gallōrum Rōmānī operibus circumdabant. 6. Centuriō et animō et corpore miser esse dīcitur. 7. Dux erat ēgregiā virtūte. 8. Dux erat ēgregius virtūte. 9. Rōmānum genus semper fuit prīmum et virtūte et potestāte. 10. Paucī hominēs in illīs locīs iter Hannibalis impediēbant. 11. Pater hūius mulieris erat Rōmānus nōmine, genere barbarus.

175. Ablative of Respect. — The ablative **magnitūdine** in sentence 2 tells in what respect the Gauls surpass the Romans, and is to be translated with *in*.

Consider carefully the ablatives in sentences 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 11; and determine in what construction each is used.

176. 1. He is consul, not in name but in power. 2. When this news came, the senators feared an insurrection. 3. I was arrested a second time and remained in prison through the winter. 4. A work of this kind the Romans called an agger. 5. We had determined to come to the river by the same route, but were prevented by the size of the marsh. 6. You are said to excel the rest of the soldiers in bravery. 7. The soldiers found the body of the leader near the trees, where he had been killed. 8. The Roman race excelled the Greeks both in laws and in arms.

[1] *while Hannibal*, not *Hannibal while*. When a Latin sentence begins with a subordinate clause whose subject is also the subject of the principal clause, this word is regularly put first.



ROMAN SWORD

LESSON XXVI

177. Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō*. — Learn the indicative, active and passive, of **capiō**, *take* (section 491).

Capiō and some other verbs in **iō** have **ere** in the present infinitive active and are put in the third conjugation. Notice, however, that their forms are the same as those of verbs of the fourth conjugation in the first person singular and the third person plural of the present indicative and throughout the past and future indicative. These forms are those in which the **i** is followed by another vowel.

178. Vocabulary

causa, -ae,[1] f., *cause, reason.*
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., *desire.* [cupiō].
timor, timōris, m., *fear.* [timeō].
prīstinus, adj., *former, old-time.* [prīmus].
dē,[2] prep. with abl., *down from, from. depress.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take, capture.* [captīvus].
accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive.* [ad + capiō].
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *desire, wish.* [cupiditās].
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *do, make. factory.*
retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum, *retain.* [obtineō].
vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum, *avoid. inevitable.*

Exercises

179. 1. caperis, dūcēris, movēris. 2. cēperis, capiēris. 3. facit, fēcit. 4. faciēbam, faciam, fēceram. 5. vidēs, capiēs, retinēbis. 6. quaerēs, reperiēs. 7. cēperant, properant. 8. capere, capiēre, cēpēre. 9. fēcistis, facitis. 10. impediēbantur, capiēbantur, occīdēbantur. 11. cēpērunt, gerunt. 12. venīs, accipis. 13. venītis, accipitis 14. impedīminī, capiminī.

[1] This is the ending of the genitive singular. It is given to show to which declension the noun belongs.

[2] This is the same word that has already been given with the meaning *about, concerning.*

180. 1. you take, you hear. 2. it is taken, it is heard. 3. they are leading, they are taken. 4. they will make, they will send. 5. you will be heard, you will be taken. 6. he was sending, I was receiving. 7. to make, to hear, to guide, to advise. 8. we desire, we are fortifying. 9. we are being impeded, we are being captured.

181. 1. Ubi barbarī eum nūntium accēpērunt, timōre bellī terrēbantur. 2. Postquam magnitūdinem operum vidērunt quibus circumdatī erant, novum cōnsilium cēpērunt[1] ac pācem petiērunt. 3. Dē oppidīs in ea loca dēmigrābunt quae flūmine palūdibusque mūniuntur. 4. Hic locus nōmen cēpit ex proeliō quod ibi factum est.[2] 5. Eā dē causā[3] memoriam prīstinae virtūtis retinēre dēbēmus. 6. Nisi integer es et corpore et animō, hoc facere nōn dēbēs. 7. Tribūnus centuriōnēs mīlitēsque cupiditāte sēditiōnis[4] incendēbat. 8. Est in hominibus ēius generis magna cupiditās pecūniae. 9. Nōnne hanc suspīciōnem vītāre cupis?

182. 1. We wish to do this, but are prevented by the laws. 2. He is a king in his desire for[5] power, a woman in his fear of danger. 3. Will the leader receive the plunder which has been taken? 4. For[6] the same reason new plans were formed.[7] 5. The father retained the memory of his former valor. 6. He freed his country from the old-time fear of the Gauls. 7. He was arrested on account of a suspicion of treachery. 8. Men of this kind always desire to avoid danger.

---

[1] *took*, that is *formed*. [2] *was made*, that is *was fought*.
[3] *from this cause*, that is *for this reason*.
[4] The genitive is here best translated with *for*, as often when it would become the object, if the noun or adjective which it modifies were changed to a verb expressing the same idea (*they desired an insurrection*).
[5] See section 181, sentence 7. [6] See section 181, sentence 5.
[7] See section 181, sentence 2.

LESSON XXVII

183. Third Declension: Masculine and Feminine Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*

	hostis *enemy*	**urbs** *city*	
		SINGULAR	ENDINGS
NOM.	hostis	urbs	**is** *or* **s**
GEN.	hostis	urbis	**is**
DAT.	hostī	urbī	**ī**
ACC.	hostem	urbem	**em**
ABL.	hoste	urbe	**e**
		PLURAL	
NOM.	hostēs	urbēs	**ēs**
GEN.	hostium	urbium	**ium**
DAT.	hostibus	urbibus	**ibus**
ACC.	hostīs *or* hostēs	urbīs *or* urbēs	**īs** *or* **ēs**
ABL.	hostibus	urbibus	**ibus**

184. Case-Endings. — In what cases do the endings of these words differ from those of **hiems**?

185. Vocabulary

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state*. *civil*.
classis, classis, f., *fleet*.
hostis, hostis, m., *enemy*. *hostile*.
nāvis, nāvis,[1] f., *ship, vessel*. *naval*.
urbs, urbis, f., *city*. *urban*.
cēterī, cēterae, cētera, pl. adj., *the other*.
eō, adv., *to that place, thither*. [**is**].
extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of*. [**ex**].
iam, adv., *already*.

dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum, *lead down, lead away, withdraw*; also *bring*. [**dē** + **dūcō**].
dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum, *desert*.
trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, *hand over, surrender*. *tradition*.

[1] The ablative singular of this word often has the ending **ī**: **nāvī**.

Exercises

186. Like **hostis**, decline **classis** and **nāvis**.

187. 1. Eō hostium[1] cōpiae eōdem itinere dēductae sunt. 2. Gallī propter magnitūdinem operum Rōmānōrum dēspērāverant atque oppidum trādiderant. 3. Mīlitēs ex urbibus dēdūcentur. 4. Eō mīlitēs iam iter fēcerant.[2] 5. Postquam nūntium dē hostium classe accēpērunt, proelium vītāre cōnstituērunt. 6. Nōn sine causā ducem dēserimus. 7. Extrā hanc cīvitātem urbēs mūrīs carēbant. 8. Cēterae cīvitātēs in potestātem populī Rōmānī venīre cupiēbant. 9. Hostēs arma nāvīsque iam trādiderant.

188. 1. While these things were going on[3] in the city, the ships of the enemy were seen to be approaching. 2. On account of fear the enemy had suddenly deserted the fleet. 3. They were already outside of the city, and were marching[4] to the river. 4. The other vessels of this kind were captured. 5. For this reason he desired to retain his former power. 6. He is remarkable both in body and in mind. 7. Desire for[5] power and for a great name brought the man into this danger. 8. They hastened thither by forced[6] marches. 9. After the city was taken, the arms were surrendered.

---

[1] *The enemy*, as a military term, is generally expressed in Latin by the plural of **hostis**. [2] *had made a march*, that is *had marched*.
[3] See section 162, sentence 4. [4] See section 187, sentence 4.
[5] See page 54, foot-note 4. [6] Use **magnus**, *great*.

ROMAN STANDARDS

LESSON XXVIII

189. Third Declension: Neuter Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*

	Insigne *decoration*	**animal** *animal*	**calcar** *spur*	
		SINGULAR		ENDINGS
NOM.	īnsigne	animal	calcar	**e** *or none*
GEN.	īnsignis	animālis	calcāris	**is**
DAT.	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	**ī**
ACC.	īnsigne	animal	calcar	**e** *or none*
ABL.	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	**ī**
		PLURAL		
NOM.	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	**ia**
GEN.	īnsignium	animālium	calcārium	**ium**
DAT.	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	**ibus**
ACC.	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	**ia**
ABL.	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	**ibus**

190. Case-Endings. — In what cases do the endings of these words differ from those of **hostis**? From those of **nōmen**?

191. Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*. — The following classes of third-declension nouns have their genitive plural in **ium**: —

1. Masculine and feminine nouns having no more syllables in the genitive singular than in the nominative[1]: **hostis, hostis.**

2. Masculine and feminine nouns having two consonants before the ending of the genitive singular: **urbs, urbis; mōns, montis.**

3. Neuter nouns in **e, al,** and **ar**: **īnsigne, animal, calcar.**

[1] **Pater** is an exception. See section 459.

192. Vocabulary

animal, animālis, n., *animal*.
calamitās, calamitātis, f., *disaster*.
calcar, calcāris, n., *spur*.
cīvis, cīvis,[1] m. and f., *citizen, fellow-citizen*. [**cīvitās**].
īnsigne, īnsignis, n., *decoration*; **īnsignia** (pl.), *insignia*.
mare, maris, n., *sea*. ***marine***.
mōns, montis, m., *mountain*.
mors, mortis, f., *death*. ***mortal***.
nihil, indeclinable noun, n., *nothing*. ***annihilate***.
vīs, vīs,[2] f., *force, violence*; **vīrēs** (pl.), *strength*.
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*. ***intervene***.
ita, adv., *in this way, thus, so*. [**is**].
prīmum, adv., *first*. [**prīmus**].

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, *press, press hard, overwhelm*.
suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptum, *undertake*. [**sub** + **capiō**].

Exercises

193. Decline **cīvis, mōns, mors,** and **vīs.**

194. 1. In hōc marī Rōmānī magnam calamitātem accēpērunt.[3] 2. Ea cīvitās illīus prīstinae calamitātis memoriam semper retinēbit. 3. Nihil sine auxiliō cīvium faciet. 4. Multae nāvēs dē hāc classe vī maris premuntur. 5. Hostēs prīmum cōpiās ab oppidō dēdūxērunt, deinde bellum suscēpērunt. 6. Nihil nisi haec calcāria invēnī. 7. Cētera animālia, quae in montibus nōn capta erant, fugā mortem vītāvērunt. 8. Vīrēs eōrum hominum quī eō vēnerant integrae erant. 9. Sī cupis, ita faciam. 10. Cōnsulī haec īnsignia imperī ā cīvibus dabantur.

195. 1. Concerning the death of those who had undertaken the war he spoke thus. 2. First we took by force the towns which are between the mountains and the sea. 3. The soldiers' desire for[4] plunder was the cause of the disaster. 4. The citizens were ready to desert their leaders and sur-

[1] The ablative singular is **cīve** or **cīvī**. Compare **nāvis**.
[2] Learn the declension of this word, which is irregular (section 463).
[3] *received*, that is *suffered*.
[4] See page 54, foot-note 4.

render the city. 5. Outside of the city we were already pressed hard by the enemy's troops. 6. He had received these decorations from the commander. 7. I said nothing about the spurs which I had found among the Gauls. 8. You desired to undertake the war, but the fear of disaster prevented.

LESSON XXIX

196. Personal Pronouns. — Learn the declension of **ego**, *I*, and **tū**, *you* (section 481).

197. Personal Use of *is*. — Latin has no personal pronoun of the third person, but the demonstrative **is** is used instead. When so used, it should be translated as follows: —

		SINGULAR	
	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
NOM.	**is**, *he*.	**ea**, *she*.	**id**, *it*.
GEN.	**ēius**, *his*.	**ēius**, *her*.	**ēius**, *its*.
DAT.	**eī**, *him*.	**eī**, *her*.	**eī**, *it*.
ACC.	**eum**, *him*.	**eam**, *her*.	**id**, *it*.
ABL.	**eō**, *him*.	**eā**, *her*.	**eō**, *it*.
		PLURAL	
NOM.	**iī** or **eī**, *they*.	**eae**, *they*.	**ea**, *they*.
GEN.	**eōrum**, *their*.	**eārum**, *their*.	**eōrum**, *their*.
DAT.	**iīs** or **eīs**, *them*.	**iīs** or **eīs**, *them*.	**iīs** or **eīs**, *them*.
ACC.	**eōs**, *them*.	**eās**, *them*.	**ea**, *them*.
ABL.	**iīs** or **eīs**, *them*.	**iīs** or **eīs**, *them*.	**iīs** or **eīs**, *them*.

198. Omission of Subject. — The nominative of the personal pronouns is used only for emphasis or contrast: **tū es līber, ego sum servus**, *you are free, I am a slave*. Otherwise the subject is sufficiently indicated by the personal ending of the verb: **sum servus**, *I am a slave*; **pugnābātis**, *you were fighting*.

199. Possessive Adjectives. — Corresponding to the personal pronouns, there are four possessive adjectives: **meus**, *my*; **noster**, *our*; **tuus**, *your* (of a single possessor); **vester**, *your* (of more than one possessor). The possessives are adjectives of the first and second declensions, and are declined like **bonus** and **integer**. Like other adjectives, they agree in gender, number,[1] and case with the noun they modify. They normally follow the noun.

The possessive adjectives are generally used only for emphasis or contrast, or where the meaning would not be clear without them: **patrem tuum vidit**, *he saw your father.*

200. Vocabulary

ego, *I*; **nōs** (pl.), *we*. ***egotist.***
meus, *my*, *mine*.
noster, *our*, *ours*.
tū, *you*; **vōs** (pl.), *you*.
tuus, *your*, *yours*.
vester, *your*, *yours*.
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *great number*, *number*. [**multus**].
pars, partis, f., *part*.
salūs, salūtis, f., *safety*. ***salutary.***
etiam, adv., *even*. [**et** + **iam**].
nōn iam, *no longer*.

reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum, *give back*, *restore*. [**dō**].
remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum, *send back*, *return*. [**mittō**].
trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum, *lead across*, *bring over*. [**dūcō**].

Exercises

201. Decline together **pars nostra, cōnsilium tuum, ager noster, pater vester,** and **opus meum.**

202. 1. Prīmum ā nōbīs, deinde ā cēterīs cīvitātibus bellum susceptum est. 2. Vī maris terrēbāmur, atque etiam mortem exspectābāmus. 3. Dux ā classe revocātus est, neque ad eam[2] posteā remissus est. 4. Magnam multitūdinem

[1] Notice that the number of a possessive adjective is not determined by the number of possessors denoted by it, but by the number of the noun which it modifies: **amīcus noster**, *our friend*; **amīcī meī**, *my friends*.

[2] We say *it*, but the Latin has **eam**, *her*, because **classis** is feminine.

cīvium meōrum in īnsulam vestram trādūcam. 5. Nostrī[1] in hāc montium parte ā multitūdine hostium iam premuntur. 6. Lēgātī ad eum missī erant, prīmī[1] cīvitātis. 7. Ea calcāria quae accēpistī mihi reddēs. 8. Inter eōs erat nihil amīcitiae.[2] 9. Magna pars hostium post ēius mortem fugā salūtem petiit.

203. 1. The consul is anxious about the safety of the citizens. 2. A large part of the city had already been deserted, but nothing was found there by our men.[3] 3. Thither he brought the soldiers; then he stationed them outside of the city. 4. I have brought over the rest of[4] my troops, and shall leave them in your camp. 5. Their ships will not be sent back to us; for there is great danger in our sea. 6. After this disaster nothing of the former power was restored to the state. 7. I shall surrender to you even these insignia of power; for I am no longer your consul. 8. The strength of these animals is remarkable. 9. He ought not thus to wound you, who are[5] his friends and love[5] him.

THE FIRST PUNIC WAR

Clārum iam erat nōmen urbis Rōmae, tamen bellum extrā Italiam nōn gestum erat. Prīmum in Siciliā bellum contrā Poenōs ā Rōmānīs susceptum est. Eō Rōmānī magnās cōpiās trādūxērunt ac rēgem Syrācūsārum vīcērunt et Poenōs,

---

[1] The masculine plural of an adjective is often used as a substantive (that is, with the construction of a noun), and may then generally be translated with *men:* **nostrī**, *our men;* **prīmī**, *the first men*. Compare English *the poor*.

[2] *nothing of friendship*, that is *no friendship*.

[3] Omit. [4] See section 154. sentence 2.

[5] Notice that a verb which has a relative pronoun for its subject agrees in person with the antecedent of the relative.

quī magnam partem ēius īnsulae occupāverant. Tum prīmum Rōmānī in marī pugnāvērunt. Duīlius cōnsul multās nāvīs cēpit aut dēlēvit et magnum hostium numerum occīdit. Quā[1] victōriā animus Rōmānōrum auctus est.

Post paucōs annōs in Āfricam cōpiae Rōmānōrum missae sunt. Hamilcar, Karthāginiēnsium dux, quī magnum numerum nāvium coēgerat, cum classe Rōmānā pugnāvit atque fugātus est. Ubi Rōmānī in Āfricam vēnērunt, multīs proeliīs Karthāginiēnsīs vīcērunt,[2] multa oppida conciliāvērunt. Tandem Karthāginiēnsēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petiērunt. Ubi M. Atīlius Rēgulus, dux Rōmānōrum, pācem cum iīs nōn fēcit, auxilium ā Graecīs petiērunt. Graecī Xanthippum mīsērunt, quī Rēgulum magnō proeliō vīcit. Multī Rōmānī occīsī sunt, Rēgulus captus est.

Posteā tamen fortūna Karthāginiēnsīs dēseruit. Itaque hī Rēgulum cum lēgātīs dē pāce et dē iīs captīvīs quōs Rōmānī retinēbant ad urbem Rōmam mīsērunt. Rēgulus ad patrēs vocātus est et ita dīxit: "Sī pācem faciētis et Poenīs captīvōs reddētis, ego hāc in urbe manēbō; sī captīvōs retinēbitis, Poenī mē postulābunt. Sīc cōnstitūtum est. Ego autem in potestātem hostium vēnī, quā dē causā nōn iam cīvis Rōmānus sum. Poenī calamitāte perīculōque premuntur, dē victōriā dēspērant, nihil nisi pācem ac salūtem cōgitant. Itaque nōn pācem cum iīs facere captīvōsque reddere, sed mē ad eōs remittere et bellum renovāre dēbētis." Haec sententia superāvit. Captīvī retentī sunt. Rēgulus ad hostīs remissus est, id quod[3] postulāverat, ac suppliciīs occīsus est. Haec fuit clāra illa Rēgulī mors.

---

[1] Do not translate literally *by which*, but *by this*. Latin often uses the relative pronoun to introduce a sentence, where a demonstrative or personal pronoun is required in English.

[2] English usage often requires *and* where no conjunction is used in Latin.

[3] *that which*, that is *as*.

Tandem ubi classis ā Rōmānīs magnō proeliō dēlēta est, Poenī iterum pācem petiērunt, quae iis data est. Rōmānīs captīvōs reddidērunt ac Siciliam cēterāsque īnsulās quae inter Italiam et Siciliam sunt trādidērunt.

LESSON XXX

204. Reflexive Pronoun. — Learn the declension of **suī**, *self* (section 482).

Notice that **suī** has no nominative, and that the same forms are used for all genders and for both numbers.

205. Intensive Pronoun. — Learn the declension of **ipse**, *self* (section 484).

Notice that **ipse** is declined like **ille** and **iste**, except for the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

206. Vocabulary

suī, *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it, them.*

suus, poss. adj., *his (own), her (own), its (own), their (own).*

ipse, *self; myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself*, etc.; sometimes *very.*

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m., *young man, youth. adolescence.*

auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., *influence, authority.*

frāter, frātris,[1] m., *brother. fraternal.*

lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., *embassy.* [lēgātus].

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*, a division of the Roman army.

obses, obsidis, m., *hostage.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *reply, answer. responsible.*

interim, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.* [inter].

dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum, *send about*; also *send away, dismiss.* [mittō].

perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātum, *throw into confusion. perturbation.*

---

[1] **Frāter**, like **pater**, has the genitive plural in **um**.

Exercises

207. 1. Hūius legiōnis mīlitēs, quōrum vīrēs nōn iam integrae erant, ab hostibus premēbantur; tamen sē dēfendēbant. 2. Etiam nōs ipsae calamitāte vestrā perturbātae sumus. 3. Itaque ēius frāter lēgātiōnem ā sē sine respōnsō dīmīsit. 4. Interim adulēscēns dē frātre suō ēiusque salūte timēbat. 5. Tūne ipse hanc lēgātiōnem suscipiēs? 6. Cēterōs lēgātōs dīmittet, mē autem sēcum[1] retinēbit. 7. Interim eam ipsam legiōnem quam sēcum habēbat ad montem dūxit. 8. Obsidēs quī redditī erant magnae auctōritātis inter suōs cīvīs erant. 9. Ego ipse tibi haec calcāria dō. 10. Ipse mē[2] ab illīs animālibus ita dēfendī.

208. Use of Reflexive Pronoun. — Notice that **sē** in sentence 1 denotes the same persons as **mīlitēs**, and that **sē** in sentence 3 denotes the same person as **frāter**. The reflexive pronoun is regularly used, instead of **is**, to refer to a subject in the third person. In sentence 3, for example, **sē** must be translated *him*, as **eō** would be; but if **eō** had been used, it would refer to the person denoted by **ēius**, not to **frāter**.

209. Use of Intensive Pronoun. — Notice that **ipsae** in sentence 2 emphasizes, or intensifies, **nōs** (*we ourselves*); that **ipsam** in sentence 7 emphasizes **legiōnem** (*that legion itself, that very legion*); and that **ipse** in sentence 10 emphasizes the unexpressed subject (*I myself*).

The English words *himself, herself, itself, themselves* are sometimes reflexive and sometimes intensive; and their Latin equivalent is therefore sometimes **suī** and sometimes **ipse**.

210. Use of *suus*. — Notice that **suō** and **ēius** in sentence 4 are both translated *his;* but that **suō** refers to **adulēscēns**, the subject of

[1] Translate as if it were **cum sē**. When the preposition **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it follows and is joined to the pronoun.

[2] *I myself defended me*, that is *I defended myself*.

the sentence, while **ēius** refers to **frātre.** **Suus** is the possessive adjective corresponding to the reflexive pronoun **suī.**

211. 1. By his influence he won over to himself[1] a great number of the young men and prevented their insurrection. 2. First they armed themselves against those states that were near. 3. Then I sent away from me this very embassy. 4. Meanwhile through[2] his influence the hostages were sent back into their own country. 5. The soldiers whom I was bringing over with[3] me were frightened by the violence of the sea. 6. Our centurions themselves will be thrown into confusion by the great number[4] and the courage of the enemy. 7. The soldiers of this legion are leaving the decorations which they have received. 8. I have heard nothing concerning the reply which your brother gave to the embassy at that time. 9. After the death of their leader they had made peace with us.

LESSON XXXI

212. Third Declension: Adjectives of Three Endings

Learn the declension of **ācer,** *sharp* (section 466).

Adjectives of the third declension are regularly declined like nouns with genitive plural in **ium,** but they have **ī** in the ablative singular in all genders.

Notice that the nominative singular of **ācer** has a different ending in each of the three genders.

213. Third Declension: Adjectives of Two Endings

Learn the declension of **omnis,** *all* (section 467).

Notice that the nominative singular of **omnis** has the same ending in the masculine and feminine genders.

---

[1] Dative. [2] See section 106.
[3] See page 64, foot-note 1. [4] Use **multitūdō.**

214. Third Declension: Adjectives of One Ending

Learn the declension of **ingēns**, *enormous* (section 468).

Notice that the nominative singular of **ingēns** has the same ending in all three genders.

215. Vocabulary

ācer, ācris, ācre,[1] *sharp*; also *active. acrid.*

audāx, audācis,[1] *bold, daring. audacity.*

ingēns, ingentis, *enormous, great.*

nōbilis, nōbile, *well-known*; also *of noble birth, noble.*

omnis, omne, *all. omnipotent.*

eques, equitis, m., *horseman*; **equitēs** (pl.), *cavalry.* [**equus**].

pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier*; **peditēs** (pl.), *infantry. pedestrian.*

fortiter, adv., *bravely. fortitude.*

interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum, *put to death, kill.* [**faciō**].

resistō, resistere, restitī, *resist.*

Exercises

216. Decline together **hōc audāx cōnsilium**; **homō nōbilis**; **hostis tuus ācer**; and **tū, fēmina nōbilis.**

217. 1. Ego quidem ipse pācem vōbīscum faciam. 2. Lēgātī omnēs quī ad nōs vēnērunt virī bonī fuērunt ac nōbilēs. 3. Lēgātiōnī quae ad Hannibalem ā Rōmānīs missa erat respōnsum nōn datum est. 4. Postquam Hannibal cum omnibus suīs cōpiīs montīs superāvit,[2] Rōmānī ēius cōnsiliīs ācribus audācibusque terrēbantur. 5. Rōmānī nōn iam legiōnēs suās in Āfricam trādūcere parābant, sed etiam suam patriam portāsque Rōmae ipsīus dēfendere cōgēbantur. 6. Paucōs adulēscentīs audācīs ē numerō equitum dēlēgerat, iīsque cōnsilia sua dēmōnstrābat. 7. Hae legiōnēs multitūdine hostium

[1] Hereafter all the forms of the nominative singular of adjectives will be given in the vocabularies. Of adjectives of one ending, the nominative and the genitive singular will be given.

[2] *crossed.*

perturbābantur atque cum omnibus equitibus fugā salūtem petēbant. 8. Reliquī peditēs fortiter resistēbant neque suspīciōnem fugae dabant. 9. Nūntiī quī in omnīs partīs silvae dīmissī erant ā barbarīs comprehēnsī[1] interfectīque sunt.

218. 1. You resisted long and bravely, but were defeated by an active consul's influence. 2. The cavalry and a part of the infantry which he had brought over with him he sent back to his brother. 3. After this battle, in which an enormous number of Romans had been killed, a few young men of noble birth determined to desert Italy. 4. Meanwhile you yourself had given back all the hostages to your allies. 5. Our men[2] saved themselves and their country by this daring plan. 6. All were men of active mind and uncommon bravery.

LESSON XXXII

219. Participles. — Learn the participles of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **capiō,** including the gerundive, which is sometimes called the future passive participle (sections 489, 490, 491).

Learn also the future participle of **sum** (section 493).

The present participle and the gerundive are formed from the present stem of the verb, and have the endings **ns** and **ndus** respectively. For the quantity of the vowels before these endings, see section 4.

The neuter nominative singular of the perfect participle is learned as one of the principal parts of the verb. The future participle may usually be obtained from the perfect participle by changing **us** to **ūrus.**

---

[1] **sunt** goes with **comprehēnsī** as well as with **interfectī.**

[2] See page 61, foot-note 1.

Notice that Latin has no perfect active participle and no present passive participle.

220. Declension of Participles. — Present participles are declined like **ingēns**, except that they have **e** in the ablative singular (section 470). All other participles are declined like **bonus**.

221. Future Active Participle and Gerundive with *sum*

The future active participle is used with a form of **sum** to represent an action as about to occur or intended: **monitūrus est**, *he is about to advise, is going to advise, is intending to advise.*

The gerundive is used with a form of **sum** to represent an action as necessary or proper: **monendus est**, *he is to be advised, must be advised, ought to be advised.*

222. Vocabulary

oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f., *attack, siege.* [**oppugnō**].
ferē, adv., *almost.*
quoque, adv., *also.*
statim, adv., *immediately, at once, instantly.*

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultum, with dat., *look out for, consult.* [**cōnsilium**].
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat., *command, rule.* [**imperium**].
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat., *do harm to, injure.* ***innocent.***
persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, with dat., *persuade.*
studeō, studēre, studuī, with dat., *be eager for, be devoted to.* ***student.***

Exercises

223. 1. Nōs ipsī nostrīs cupiditātibus (*see 224*) imperāre dēbēmus. 2. Hannibal dux factus sociīs Rōmānōrum nocitūrus erat. 3. Litterae dē hāc oppugnātiōne acceptae causa ingentis timōris erant. 4. Rōmānī suae salūtī cōnsulentēs sociōs dēseruerant. 5. Gallī Rōmānōs ab Hannibale victōs

dēseruērunt; nam amīcitiae Karthāginiēnsium semper studēbant. 6. Hannibalis frāter fortiter pugnāns interfectus est. 7. Interim mīlitēs ēius legiōnis hostibus resistēbant. 8. Barbarī timōre perturbātī lēgātiōnēs in omnīs ferē partīs Āfricae dīmīsērunt. 9. Nisi tibi quoque persuāserō,[1] meīs cōnsiliīs audācibus statim dēsistam. 10. Nihil dē auctōritāte est dīcendum.

224. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. — The dative **cupiditātibus** in sentence 1 is governed by **imperāre**, an intransitive verb. In the English expression *to rule our desires* the verb is transitive, and *desires* is its direct object; but we may translate **imperāre** intransitively (*rule over our desires*). So **hostibus resistēbant** in sentence 7 is naturally translated *were resisting the enemy*, but it is closer to the literal meaning to say *were standing against the enemy;* and **tibi persuāserō** in sentence 9 means literally *make* (something) *agreeable to you.*

Note the other intransitive verbs which govern a dative in the Latin sentences.

225. Agreement of Participle. — Notice that the participles in the sentences above, like adjectives, agree in gender, number, and case with the nouns they modify.

226. Translation of Participles. — A literal translation of the first clause of sentence 5 (*the Gauls deserted the Romans defeated by Hannibal*) does not express the thought in idiomatic English. We must say *the Gauls deserted the Romans after they had been defeated by Hannibal*, or *because they had been defeated;* or *the Gauls deserted the Romans, who had been defeated by Hannibal.* A present or perfect participle is often best translated by a clause.

227. 1. A sharp winter often injures the trees. 2. Great forces of cavalry and infantry collected from Africa were led into Italy. 3. Those young men of noble birth are about

[1] See section 155.

to do harm both to themselves and to their country. 4. Being eager for power, they look out for their own fortunes, not for their country. 5. They had persuaded almost[1] all their friends also.[2] 6. We were about to give this answer to those[3] resisting. 7. Though[4] deserted by all our allies, we shall look out for our safety and resist the attack. 8. After hostages had been given, the siege was immediately abandoned. 9. Having been defeated by the barbarians, the Romans no longer rule these states.

LESSON XXXIII

228. Fourth Declension

	exercitus *army*		**cornū** *horn*	
		SINGULAR		
		ENDINGS		ENDINGS
NOM.	exercit**us**	**us**	corn**ū**	**ū**
GEN.	exercit**ūs**	**ūs**	corn**ūs**	**ū**
DAT.	exercit**uī**	**uī**	corn**ū**	**ū**
ACC.	exercit**um**	**um**	corn**ū**	**ūs**
ABL.	exercit**ū**	**ū**	corn**ū**	**ū**
		PLURAL		
NOM.	exercit**ūs**	**ūs**	corn**ua**	**ua**
GEN.	exercit**uum**	**uum**	corn**uum**	**uum**
DAT.	exercit**ibus**	**ibus**	corn**ibus**	**ibus**
ACC.	exercit**ūs**	**ūs**	corn**ua**	**ua**
ABL.	exercit**ibus**	**ibus**	corn**ibus**	**ibus**

[1] **Ferē** usually follows the word it modifies.
[2] **Quoque**, like **quidem**, follows the word it modifies.
[3] Omit. We may say in Latin *the resisting*, using the participle as a substantive. Compare English *the living*, and see page 61, foot-note 1.
[4] Omit.

229. Gender. — Nouns of the fourth declension ending in **us** are regularly masculine; those ending in **ū** are neuter.

Domus, *home*, and **manus**, *hand*, are feminine.

230. Vocabulary

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn*; also *wing* (of an army).
dēditiō, **dēditiōnis**, f., *surrender*. [dē + dō].
exercitus, -ūs, m., *army*.
manus, -ūs, f., *hand*; also *band*, *body*. *manual*.
bene, adv., *well*, *successfully*. [bonus].
inde, adv., *from there*.
numquam, adv., *never*.

efficiō, **efficere**, **effēcī**, **effectum**, *bring about*, *accomplish*, *complete*. [ex + faciō].
iubeō, **iubēre**, **iussī**, **iussum**, *order*.

Exercises

231. Decline together **manus mea, exercitus clārus, illud ingēns cornū.**

232. 1. Rōmānī Hannibalem per lēgātōs iussērunt statim oppugnātiōne dēsistere exercitumque ab urbe dēdūcere. 2. Bellum in Italiā ab eō bene gestum est. 3. Magnae manūs equitum in omnīs partīs[1] dīmissae cīvitātēs bellō studentīs terruērunt. 4. Barbarī legiōnibus Rōmānīs fortiter resistent ac sē armīs dēfendent. 5. Ille vir inter omnīs cīvīs nōbilīs prīmus ferē est virtūte et cōnsiliō. 6. Ab[2] hāc parte animālia cornibus equōs nostrōs timōre perturbātōs interficiēbant. 7. Ab illō quoque cornū exercitus hostium in manibus nostrīs[3] vīsus est. 8. Ingentem praedam ex illā urbe iam

[1] *into all parts*, that is *in all directions*. **Pars** is often best translated by *direction* or *side*.
[2] *on this side*. **Ab** is often used in expressions denoting position, and it may then be translated *in* or *on*.
[3] *in our hands*, that is *close upon us*.

in dēditiōnem acceptā in Italiam mittī iussit. 9. Cēterī [1] cupientēs lēgātō persuādēre eumque ab audācī cōnsiliō prohibēre nihil tamen effēcērunt. 10. Lēgātī inde ad eum missī numquam retinēbantur.

233. 1. The Roman nation did not always look out for the safety of the states which it ruled. 2. The city is bravely defended by an active and daring consul; you will never bring about a surrender by force. 3. He ordered his men [2] to be recalled from the work at once; for he was accomplishing nothing. 4. With the horn which he had in his hand he gave the signal to the army. 5. The infantry were ordered [3] to abandon the attack, and marched from there to the river. 6. We received well those who were about to injure us. 7. The ships already completed were sent in all directions.

THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Post paucōs annōs Pūnicum bellum per Hannibalem, Karthāginiēnsium ducem, est renovātum. Quī [4] tum adulēscēns Saguntum, Hispāniae oppidum, quod Rōmānīs erat amīcum, oppugnāvit. Eum Rōmānī per lēgātōs oppugnātiōne statim dēsistere iussērunt. Quōs lēgātōs Hannibal sine respōnsō dīmīsit. Lēgātiō in Āfricam dē iniūriis sociōrum missa ibi quoque nihil effēcit; nam Karthāginiēnsēs bellō studēbant. Dum lēgātiōnēs ā Rōmānīs mittuntur, Saguntum ab Hannibale captum est cum magnā praedā. Quod ubi [5] Rōmānīs nūntiātum est, urbs timōre est perturbāta. Cīvēs hostem in Italiā atque iam ad portās Rōmae vidēre

[1] Used as a substantive, *the others*. [2] Omit.
[3] Use a participle (*having been ordered to abandon the attack marched*).
[4] *he*. See page 62, foot-note 1.
[5] *when this*. Quod has no single word as its antecedent, but refers to the substance of the preceding sentence, namely the capture of Saguntum.

vidēbantur.[1] Magnae cōpiae coāctae P. Cornēliō Scīpiōnī et Ti.[2] Semprōniō Longō cōnsulibus datae sunt.

Hannibal prīmum Pȳrēnaeōs montīs, deinde Alpīs cum peditibus, equitibus, elephantīsque superāvit. Cornēlium ad Tīcīnum, Semprōnium ad Trebiam vīcit. Interim multās Galliae cīvitātēs, quae Rōmānōs dēseruerant, in amīcitiam accēpit. Posteā Flāminius cōnsul in proeliō ad Trasumennum interfectus est cōpiaeque ēius dēlētae sunt. Diū Q.[3] Fabius Maximus, vir ēgregiī cōnsilī, cui magna potestās data erat, sine pugnā Hannibalem impediēbat ac patriam ex perīculō servābat. Tandem Rōmānī ad Cannās in Āpūliā proeliō superātī magnam calamitātem iterum accēpērunt. Tamen pācem numquam cōgitāvērunt. Novus exercitus coāctus est, etiam puerī et servī armātī sunt.

Interim in Hispāniā frāter Hannibalis, nōmine Hasdrubal, quī ibi mānserat cum magnīs cōpiis, ā Scīpiōnibus, Rōmānīs ducibus, victus est. Hī ipsī Scīpiōnēs post paucōs annōs victī interfectīque sunt. M. Claudius Mārcellus in Campāniā bellum cum Hannibale bene gessit. Deinde magnam partem īnsulae Siciliae cēpit, quam Poenī occupāverant; Syrācūsās quoque, nōbilem urbem, expugnāvit et ingentem praedam inde in Italiam mīsit. Omnīs ferē reliquās cīvitātēs in dēditiōnem accēpit.

In Hispāniam prō ducibus quī interfectī erant P. Cornēlius Scīpiō, vir Rōmānōrum omnium ferē prīmus, missus est. Quī etiam puer[4] in pugnā ad Tīcīnum patrem suum virtūte servāverat. Post calamitātem Cannēnsem multōs nōbilīs adulēscentīs Italiam dēserere cupientīs prohibuerat. In Hispāniam missus Karthāginem Novam cēpit, quā in urbe arma et pecūniam Poenī habēbant, obsidēs quoque nōbilīs, quōs ab

[1] *seemed*, a common meaning of the passive of **videō**.
[2] The abbreviation for **Tiberius**.
[3] The abbreviation for **Quīntus**.
[4] *even as a boy, while still a boy.*

Hispānīs accēperant. Hōs obsidēs Scīpiō reddidit. Ita omnīs ferē Hispāniae cīvitātēs sibi conciliāvit. Hasdrubal, quī ā frātre ex Hispāniā in Italiam vocātus erat, ad Sēnam fortiter pugnāns occīsus est.

Tandem Scīpiō cōnsul creātus in Āfricam est missus, ibique Poenōs sociōsque eōrum vīcit. Itaque Hannibal in Āfricam ab iīs revocātus est, atque Italia timōre bellī līberāta est. Ad Zamam Scīpiō Hannibalem ipsum vīcit. Post hoc proelium pāx cum Karthāginiēnsibus facta est.

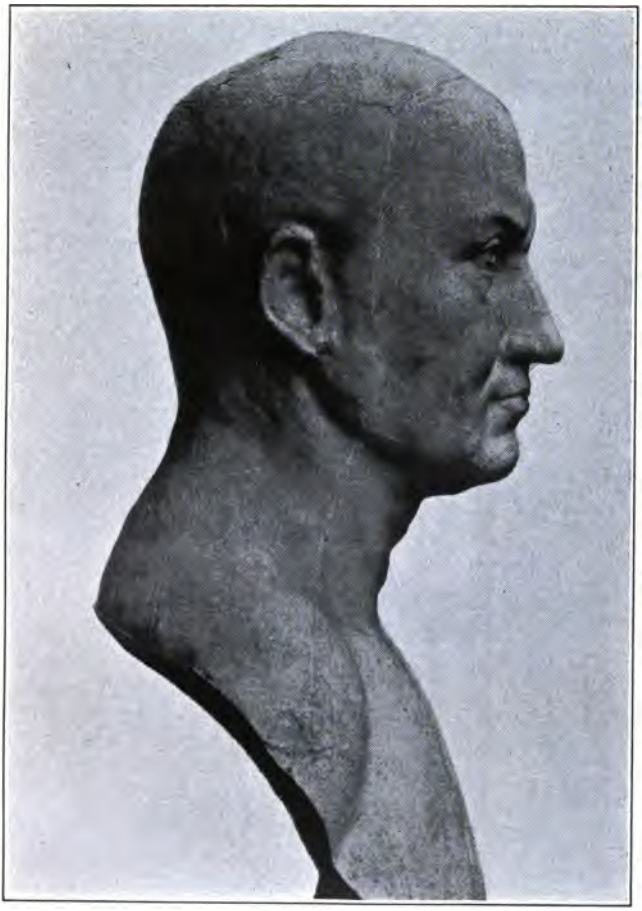
LESSON XXXIV

234. **Fifth Declension**

	diēs *day*	**rēs** *thing*	
		SINGULAR	ENDINGS
NOM.	diēs	rēs	ēs
GEN.	diēī	reī	ēī *or* eī
DAT.	diēī	reī	ēī *or* eī
ACC.	diem	rem	em
ABL.	diē	rē	ē
		PLURAL	
NOM.	diēs	rēs	ēs
GEN.	diērum	rērum	ērum
DAT.	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus
ACC.	diēs	rēs	ēs
ABL.	diēbus	rēbus	ēbus

235. Case-Endings. — The genitive and the dative singular of the fifth declension have **ēī** after a vowel, **eī** after a consonant.

236. Gender. — Nouns of the fifth declension are regularly feminine, but **diēs** is usually masculine.



SCIPIO

237. Vocabulary

diēs, **-ēī**, m., *day. diary.*
equitātus, **-ūs**, m., *cavalry.* [eques].
fidēs, **-eī**, f., *trust, trustworthiness;* also *pledge, protection. fidelity.*
nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**,[1] m. and f., *no one.*
rēs, **-eī**, f., *thing, affair, matter. real.*
ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.*
occurrō, **occurrere**, **occucurrī** or **occurrī**, **occursum**, with dat., *run against, meet. occurrence.*
praeficiō, **praeficere**, **praefēcī**, **praefectum**, with dat., *put in command of.* [faciō].
praestō, **praestāre**, **praestitī**, **praestitum** or **praestātum**, with dat., *stand before, surpass.*
succēdō, **succēdere**, **successī**, **successum**, with dat., *take the place of, succeed.* [excēdō].

238. Compound Verbs. — We have seen that verbs are often combined with prepositions: **dē-dūcō**, *lead down.* Many prepositions and verbs appear in compounds with changes in spelling: **oc-currō** instead of **ob-currō**, **suc-cēdō** instead of **sub-cēdō**, **prae-ficiō** instead of **prae-faciō**, **ac-cipiō** instead of **ad-capiō**.

Exercises

239. Decline together **haec omnis rēs, īdem diēs.**

240. 1. Nēmō Hannibalī (*see 241*) virtūte praestābat. 2. Itaque Hannibal ducī interfectō successit. 3. Ubi rēgī occurrit, cūius suspiciō vītanda erat, multa[2] dē fidē suā dīxit. 4. Quam ob causam rēx eum nāvibus quoque praefēcit. 5. Lēgātī Rōmānōrum ad hunc rēgem missī Hannibalem comprehēnsūrī erant. 6. Dux dēditiōnī studēns omnibus ferē cīvibus persuāserat. 7. Sī mihi hanc fidem dederis,

[1] The genitive and ablative are not used.
[2] *said many things*, that is *spoke much*. The neuter plural of an adjective is often used as a substantive, and is then generally to be translated with *things*. Compare English *the useful*, and see page 61, foot-note 1.

tibi tuīsque rēbus cōnsulam. 8. Equitēs in omnīs partīs dīmittunt atque omnia[1] efficiunt quae cupīvērunt. 9. Imperābimus quidem īīs quōs vīcimus, captīvīs tamen nōn nocēbimus. 10. Huic reī ad diem mortis numquam studēre dēstitit. 11. Hostēs nostrō exercituī numerō mīlitum praestābant. 12. Quam ob rem equitātus ab hōc cornū magnā tēlōrum multitūdine premēbātur.

241. Dative with Compound Verbs. — The dative **Hannibalī** in sentence 1 is governed by **praestābat.** In the English translation *surpassed Hannibal* the verb is transitive, and *Hannibal* is its direct object; but **praestābat** is intransitive, and the literal meaning is *stood before Hannibal.* In sentence 4 **prae** is combined with the transitive verb **faciō**, and therefore a direct object is required in addition to the dative (*put him in command of the ships*).

Note the other compound verbs which govern a dative in the Latin sentences.

242. 1. After a few days the fleet was sent from there. 2. If you give me your pledge, I will put you in command of a body of horsemen. 3. Having been put in command of all the cavalry, he hastened at once to meet the enemy. 4. After his son succeeded to the throne, things were carried on well. 5. I have met no one on this side of the camp. 6. After the first day of the siege the legions had been ordered to take the place of the cavalry. 7. Hannibal surpassed the other leaders in all these things. 8. He always desired to injure the Romans. 9. The Roman ambassadors were intending to increase the king's suspicions concerning Hannibal's trustworthiness.

---

[1] *all things*, that is *everything*.

LESSON XXXV

243. Vocative Case. — The person or thing addressed is denoted by the vocative. Since this case generally does not have a distinct form, it has not been included in the paradigms. The vocative and nominative are always the same in the plural; in the singular they differ only in the second declension, as follows: —

Nouns in **us** and the masculine of adjectives in **us** have **e** in the vocative: **quid facis, bone serve?** *what are you doing, good slave?*

Fīlius and proper nouns ending in **ius** have **ī** in the vocative: **Ascanī, fīlī.** The accent falls on the penult, even when this is short: **As-ca′-nī.** See section 76.

The masculine of **meus** has **mī** as its vocative.

244. Review of Case-Endings. — Review the case-endings of all the declensions (sections 457, 458, 459, 460, 461, 462), and make a table showing all the endings for each case together: genitive singular, **ae, ī, is, ūs, ēī** or **eī**, *etc.*

Which two cases are the same in the plural in every declension? In which declension are the dative and ablative singular the same? Which two cases are always the same in the neuter? In which declensions are the nominative and accusative plural of masculine and feminine nouns the same? In which declensions are the genitive and dative singular the same? The genitive singular and nominative plural? In which declension is the nominative plural the same as the nominative singular? How do the nominative and ablative singular of the first declension differ? The nominative and genitive singular masculine of the fourth declension?

245. Vocabulary

āra, -ae, f., *altar*.
Iuppiter, gen. **Iovis**, m., *Jupiter* or *Jove*, king of the gods.
ops, opis, f., *aid*; **opēs** (pl.), *resources*. *opulent*.
sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice*.
vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound*. [**vulnerō**].
certus, -a, -um, *definite, certain*.
dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine, superhuman*. [**deus**].
inquit, used in quoting, *said he*.

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, *finish*; also *exhaust*. [**faciō**].
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *go away, come off*. [**excēdō**].
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *doubt, hesitate*. ***indubitable***.

Exercises

246. 1. "Num ob hanc causam," inquit, "rēx, dē fidē meā dubitās?" 2. Certum diem sacrificī, mī amīce, cōnstituēmus. 3. Hoc sacrificium ad āram tuam, magna filia Iovis, facientēs fidem tuam petimus. 4. Castra, lēgāte, prō quibus exercitum cōnstituistī, bene sunt mūnīta et nātūrā et manū. 5. Nōn sine ope dīvīnā, cīvēs, Rōmānī bellum gerunt atque haec ingentia opera cōnficiunt. 6. Equitātus, Ascanī, in eam partem missus hostibus occurret. 7. "Cupisne," inquit, "mī fīlī, mēcum in Italiam discēdere?" 8. Quam ob rem,[1] clāre cōnsul, integrī mīlitēs legiōnī vulneribus iam cōnfectae ab hōc cornū nōn succēdunt? 9. Hannibal dum oppidum oppugnat, vulnus accēpit. 10. Bellum suscēpit et magnās rēs vīribus opibusque efficit.

247. Position of Vocative. — The vocative normally follows one or more words, as in the sentences above.

248. Position of *inquit*. — **Inquit** follows one or more words of the quotation, as in sentences 1 and 7 above.

249. 1. To great Jove, whom no one surpasses in justice, we make this sacrifice. 2. For without divine aid we shall accomplish nothing. 3. "My son," said he, "the resources

[1] *on account of what thing*, that is *why*.

of the Romans are enormous." 4. My boy, when the sacrifice had been finished, were you not ordered to take the place of your father? 5. After the surrender of Saguntum, Hannibal went away from there. 6. Great forces of cavalry must be collected. 7. In that battle, Cornelius, although[1] exhausted by wounds, you were saved by the superhuman valor of your son. 8. I hesitate, brother, to put you in command of the army. 9. "Never before, my fellow-citizens," said he, "have I demanded your aid and protection." 10. Why, my friend, do you hesitate to fix a definite day?

LESSON XXXVI

250. Locative Case. — Names of towns have a locative case, which is used to denote the place where. In the singular of the first and second declensions the locative is the same as the genitive, and elsewhere it is the same as the ablative: **Rōmae**, *at Rome;* **Saguntī**, *at Saguntum;* **Karthāgine**, *at Carthage;* **Syrācūsīs**, *at Syracuse.*

The common nouns **domus** and **rūs** have the locatives **domī**, *at home*, and **rūrī**, *in the country.*

251. Vocabulary

domus, -ūs,[2] f., *home. domestic.*
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe.* [genus].
imperātor, imperātōris, m., *general.* [imperō].
invidia, -ae, f., *envy, unpopularity. invidious.*
iūs, iūris, n., *right, rights.* [iniūria].
rūs, rūris, n., *the country,* opposed to the city. *rustic.*
victor, victōris, m., *victor.* [vincō].
coepī, perfect tense, *have begun, began.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, *lead to, bring;* also *induce.* [ad + dūcō]
cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātum, *keep, observe.* [servō].
impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum, *obtain* (a request).

[1] Omit.

[2] Learn the declension of this word, which has forms of both the second and the fourth declension (section 463).

Exercises

252. 1. Noster imperātor ab illō proeliō quod in Āfricā factum est victor discessit. 2. Ille divīnus vir Rōmae habitat. 3. Praesidium Syrācūsīs cōnstitūtum est. 4. "Domī," inquit, "cīvēs, nēmō mē in meō iūre impediet." 5. Nūntius, quem Rōmam (*see 254*) miseram, frātrī meō domum venienti occurrit. 6. Tandem servī, quī nihil impetrāverant, rūs revocātī sunt. 7. Ā tē, Rōma, omnēs gentēs opem fidemque petunt. 8. Hannibal, quī huic imperātōrī successit, omnibus cōnsiliō praestitit. 9. Lēgātī Rōmā (*see 255*) vēnērunt atque Hannibalem in suspīciōnem invidiamque addūcere coepērunt. 10. Sī tū, mī frāter, tuam fidem cōnservābis, ego nōn domō discēdam. 11. Domōs nostrās relīquimus et rūre Syrācūsās dēmigrāvimus. 12. Quam ob rem ex urbe dīmissus post paucōs diēs in Āfricam pervēnit.

253. Place Where. — How is the place where expressed when the noun is not the name of a town, **domus**, or **rūs**?

254. Place to Which. — The accusatives **Rōmam** (sentence 5), **domum** (sentence 5), **rūs** (sentence 6) denote the place to which, and are to be translated *to Rome, home, into the country.*

How is the place to which expressed when the noun is not the name of a town, **domus**, or **rūs**?

255. Place from Which. — The ablatives **Rōmā** (sentence 9), **domō** (sentence 10), **rūre** (sentence 11) denote the place from which, and are to be translated *from Rome, from home, from the country.*

How is the place from which expressed when the noun is not the name of a town, **domus**, or **rūs**?

256. 1. I have come from the city into the country, and here I shall stay. 2. If you put this general in command of your army, great king, you will come off victor. 3. The ambassadors who had come from Rome were sent back home

without an answer. 4. When he had finished the sacrifice, he brought his son to the altar of Jupiter. 5. Hannibal was impeded at home by the envy of his fellow-citizens. 6. A messenger was sent to Rome about the tribe which had not observed the rights[1] of ambassadors. 7. We hesitated to remain at Rome; and so we came to Syracuse. 8. After the insurrection they began to obtain from the senators the rights which they had demanded. 9. You ought not to go away from home; for certain disaster is approaching.

LESSON XXXVII

257. Present Subjunctive Active. — Learn the present subjunctive active of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **capiō** (sections 490, 491).

Notice that the present subjunctive has **ē** (shortened in the usual places) in the first conjugation and **ā** (shortened in the usual places) in the other conjugations; and that the final vowel of the stem does not appear in the first and third conjugations, and is shortened in the second and fourth conjugations.

In what other mood and tense do the forms **regam, audiam,** and **capiam** occur?

258. Vocabulary

ut, conj., *in order that, so that, that.*
nē, conj., *that not, lest.*
iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n., *oath.*
odium, -ī, n., *hatred. odious.*
potest, *is able, can.*
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate.*
voluntās, voluntātis, f., *wish, disposition. voluntary.*

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, *find out, learn. cognizant.*
redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum, *reduce, bring.*
teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *hold, keep.* [retineō].

[1] Use the singular.

Exercises

259. Inflect in the present subjunctive active **dō, teneō, resistō, mūniō,** and **interficiō.**

260. 1. Pater ēius, ut opem dīvīnam impetret (*see 261*), sacrificium ad āram Iovis facit. 2. Nē pater meus dubitet, fidem et iūs iūrandum dabō. 3. Pater hoc iūs iūrandum postulat, ut Hannibal ēius odium Rōmānōrum semper memoriā teneat.[1] 4. Hannibal omnīs eās gentīs in suam potestātem redēgit, Rōmānōs autem superāre nōn potest. 5. In Italiā bellum gerēns semper discessit victor Rōmānōsque victōs dīmīsit. 6. Cīvēs invidiā adductī cōnsilia imperātōris impediunt, nē domī potestātem ēius augeant. 7. Huic bellō contrā voluntātem senātūs praefectus erat. 8. Hannibal Karthāginem revocātur, ut patriam dēfendat. 9. Lēgātī ad rēgem veniunt, ut Hannibalem in suspīciōnem addūcant. 10. Ipse dē voluntāte ēius in[2] sē dubitāre coeperat. 11. Rōmā, Pyrrhe, statim discēdere cupiō, nē Rōmānī cōnsilia mea cognōscant. 12. Tē Rōmae tenēbimus, nē hostibus hās rēs nūntiēs.

261. Clauses of Purpose. — In sentence 1 the clause **ut . . . impetret** expresses the father's purpose in making a sacrifice; it may be translated *in order that he may obtain, that he may obtain, to obtain*. The clause **nē . . . dubitet** in sentence 2 also expresses purpose (*that my father may not doubt, lest my father doubt*). Notice that the verbs of these clauses are in the subjunctive.

262. 1. I shall come into the country to finish[3] the work. 2. The wound cannot[4] keep him at home. 3. The senate

---

[1] *hold in memory, remember.* [2] *toward;* **sē** is accusative.

[3] Be careful not to use the Latin infinitive when the English infinitive expresses purpose.

[4] Two Latin words must be used for *cannot* (*can not, is not able*). See section 260, sentence 4.

holds the leaders, in order that it may bring[1] the state into its power. 4. You ought not to destroy the rights of a free people, to increase your power. 5. He desires to find out the senate's wish, lest he do this against its authority. 6. Hamilcar demands this, in order that he may fire his son with hatred of the Romans. 7. "My son," said he, "will you always keep[2] this oath?" 8. At last victory is certain. 9. The senate sends ambassadors to the king, that they may learn his disposition toward the Romans. 10. They speak against Hannibal, that[3] he may not retain the king's friendship.

LESSON XXXVIII

263. Present Subjunctive Passive. — Inflect **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **capiō** in the present subjunctive passive by substituting the passive personal endings for the active (sections 490, 491).

264. Vocabulary

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access.* [iter].
potēns, potentis, *powerful. omnipotent.*
simul, adv., *at the same time. simultaneous.*
societās, societātis, f., *alliance.* [socius].
tempus, temporis, n., *time. temporal.*
ūsque, adv., *up, even;* **ūsque ad,** *up to, even to.*

aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, *open. aperture.*
comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum, *prepare, procure.* [parō].

---

[1] Use **redigō.** [2] Use **cōnservō.**
[3] Not **ut.** Before you write the conjunction which introduces a clause of purpose, you must notice whether the clause is negative.

Exercises

265. Inflect in the present subjunctive, active and passive, **dūcō, līberō, impediō, accipiō,** and **iubeō.**

266. 1. Senātus lēgātōs mittit, quī societātem faciant (*see 267*). 2. Lēgātiō Rōmā venit, quae voluntātem rēgis cognōscat. 3. Hannibal magnās cōpiās comparat, quibus Italiam in potestātem suam redigat. 4. Imperātor viam per montīs aperit, quā exercitus in Italiam trādūcātur. 5. Ubi aditum ad rēgem impetrāvit, sē ā suspīciōne dēfendere coepit. 6. Quam ob rem societātem habēre cupit cum potentibus rēgibus, quōrum opibus bellum renovētur. 7. Pater mihi imperat ut hoc iūs iūrandum cōnservem (*see 268*). 8. Ab eō petō nē mē domī relinquat. 9. Victās gentīs in potestāte tuā tenēre dēbēs, nē bellum renovent. 10. Victīs gentibus persuādēbō nē bellum renovent. 11. Ā tē postulat ut ūsque ad illud tempus Rōmae maneās. 12. Simul eum moneō ut in reliquum tempus[1] suspīciōnem vītet.

267. Relative Clauses of Purpose. — In sentence 1 the relative clause **quī . . . faciant** expresses the senate's purpose in sending ambassadors; it may be translated *who are to make* or simply *to make*. Notice that it is the subjunctive that denotes purpose, since **quī faciunt** would mean *who make*. Notice too that **ut faciant** would express the same idea that **quī faciant** does. So in sentence 3 **quibus redigat** (*with which he may bring, with which to bring*) is equivalent to **ut iīs redigat** (*that with them he may bring*).

268. Substantive Clauses of Volition. — In sentence 7 the clause **ut . . . cōnservem** is the object of **imperat** (*commands me that I keep, commands me to keep*), and in sentence 8 the clause **nē . . . relinquat** is the object of **petō** (*I beg of him that he do not leave, I beg him not to leave*). A clause which is used as the subject or ob-

[1] **in reliquum tempus,** *for the future.* What is the literal meaning?

ject of a verb is called a substantive clause. Note the verbs which take a clause as object in the sentences above. The substantive clauses used with these verbs are like clauses of purpose in these particulars: —

1. They express what is wanted.
2. They are introduced by **ut** and **nē**.
3. The verb is in the subjunctive.
4. The action is future in relation to the action represented by the principal verb.
5. The best translation is often the English infinitive.

269. 1. He comes home from the country, in order that he may defend his rights against the hatred and violence of these powerful men. 2. He kept the oath up to the time of his death. 3. An embassy is sent to[1] bring[2] him to Rome. 4. They increase the king's envy and suspicion, that Hannibal may not be defended by him. 5. I obtain access to the king, and beg him not to injure me. 6. He cannot persuade me to abandon the alliance. 7. The victor demands that the gates of the city be opened. 8. At the same time he commands that vessels be procured. 9. We see the danger, and send the cavalry to prevent the attack.

HANNIBAL'S OATH

Sī Rōmānī, id quod nēmō dubitat, omnīs populōs virtūte superāvērunt, Hannibal cēterīs imperātōribus illōrum temporum cōnsiliō praestitit. Nam bellum cum populō Rōmānō in Italiā gerēns semper discessit victor. Domī autem cīvium suōrum invidiā impediēbātur, quā dē causā Rōmānōs superāre nōn potuit.

[1] Remember that there are two ways of putting this in Latin.
[2] Use **addūcō**.

Hannibal fuit Hamilcaris fīlius. Odium Rōmānōrum ā patre relictum ūsque ad diem mortis cōnservāvit. Quī quidem patriā expulsus cōnsilia bellī capere numquam dēstitit. Rēgem potentem Antiochum cupiditāte bellī incendit, quī Asiam ad arma contrā Italiam vocāvit. Senātus ad rēgem mittit[1] lēgātōs, quī ēius voluntātem in Rōmānōs cognōscant. Hī Hannibalem in suspiciōnem addūxērunt. Itaque rēx etiam dē fidē ēius dubitāre coepit. Tandem Hannibal id vīdit, atque aditum ad rēgem petiit. Ubi tempus cōnstitūtum vēnit, multa dē odiō suō in Rōmānōs dīxit. Deinde hoc adiūnxit: —

"Pater meus," inquit, "Hamilcar in Hispāniam Karthāgine imperātor discessūrus erat. Dum Iovī sacrificium facit, quaesīvit ā mē puerō: 'Cupisne, mī fīlī, mēcum in castra venīre?' Quod ubi audīvī, ab eō petō ut mē sēcum dūcat. 'Id faciam,' inquit, 'sī mihi fidem quam postulō dederis.' Simul mē ad āram addūxit ad quam sacrificium faciēbat. Tum mē eam tenentem sīc dīcere iussit: 'Numquam ego in amīcitiā cum Rōmānīs erō.' Id iūs iūrandum patrī datum per hōs annōs cōnservāvī, neque in reliquum tempus dē eādem sententiā dēdūcar. Tū sī societātem cum Rōmānīs cōgitās, bene faciēs sī mihi cōnsilium tuum nōn nūntiābis. Sī autem bellum parābis, exercitus tuus idōneō duce carēbit nisi mē eī praefēceris."

Ita puer in Hispāniam cum patre discessit. Post ēius mortem equitātuī omnī ab Hasdrubale imperātōre praefectus est. Ubi Hasdrubal quoque interfectus est, exercitus ipse Hannibalī imperium dedit. Sīc Hannibal etiam adulēscēns imperātor factus omnīs gentīs Hispāniae in suam potestātem bellō redēgit. Saguntum, quae cīvitās Rōmānīs erat amīca, vī expugnāvit exercitūsque magnōs comparāvit. Quārum

[1] Notice that the present tense more frequently in Latin than in English vividly represents a past action as now going on. This is called the historical present.

ANTIOCHUS

cōpiārum partem in Āfricam mīsit, partem in Hispāniā manēre iussit, reliquās in Italiam sēcum dūxit. Ad Pȳrēnaeōs montīs iter faciēns cum multīs gentibus barbarōrum pugnāvit; omnīs victōs dīmīsit. Postquam ad Alpīs vēnit, quae sunt inter Galliam et Italiam, barbarōs exercitum itinere prohibentīs fugāvit et cōpiās trādūxit. Hōc itinere nēmō anteā cum exercitū in Italiam vēnerat.

LESSON XXXIX

270. Past Subjunctive Active. — Learn the past subjunctive active of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **capiō** (sections 490, 491).

Notice that the past subjunctive is formed by adding **rē** (with **ē** shortened in the usual places) to the present stem. It may be helpful to remember that the first person singular of the past subjunctive can always be found by adding the personal ending to the present infinitive active: **audīre, audīrem; capere, caperem.**

271. Vocabulary

angustiae, -ārum, f. pl., *pass, defile.*
collēga, -ae, m., *colleague.*
dictātor, dictātōris, m., *dictator.*
praetor, praetōris, m., *praetor,* a Roman magistrate.

circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventum, *come around, surround.* [veniō].
contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, *strive, contend;* also *hasten. contention.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive back, rout.* [expellō].
praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissum, *send forward, send ahead.* [mittō].

Exercises

272. Inflect in the past subjunctive active **aperiō, careō, comparō, contendō,** and **cupiō.**

273. 1. Cīvitātibus persuāsit ut iūs iūrandum inter sē[1] darent societātemque facerent. 2. Ab eō simul petēmus ut voluntātem nostram memoriā teneat. 3. Magnum exercitum comparat, quō gentīs potentīs in dēditiōnem redigat. 4. Praetor parvam manum praemīsit, quae iter per angustiās aperīret. 5. Inde magnīs itineribus ūsque ad castra hostium contendit. 6. Cōnsul cum collēgā contrā Hannibalem vēnit, ut eum impedīret ac pelleret. 7. Collēgae suō persuādēre nōn potest nē cum hostibus contendat. 8. Hannibal īnsidiās parāvit, ut cōnsulem circumvenīret. 9. Dēlēcta manus equitum ā dictātōre mittētur, quae montem occupet, quī oppidō est propinquus.

274. Use of Subjunctive Tenses. — Notice that the present subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the principal verb represents a present or future action, the past when the principal verb represents a past action.

275. 1. The consul reports this to his colleague, in order that he may learn his opinion. 2. We persuaded him to give us time. 3. They will remain in the defile, that they may not be seen by the enemy. 4. The cavalry was sent forward to surround the routed army. 5. The senate demanded that the dictator contend with the enemy at once. 6. Fired with hatred, they warned him not to form new plans. 7. We command the praetor to seize the pass and fortify the approaches. 8. I myself hastened to the city by forced marches, in order that I might defend it against the enemy.

---

[1] *among themselves*, that is, *to each other* or *to one another*.

LESSON XL

276. Past Subjunctive Passive. — Inflect **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **capiō** in the past subjunctive passive by substituting the passive personal endings for the active (sections 490, 491).

277. Vocabulary

tam, adv., *so*, modifying adjectives and adverbs.
tantus, -a, -um, *so great, so much.*
dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss. detrimental.*
facilis, facile, *easy. facility.*
nox, noctis, f., *night. nocturnal.*
noctū, adv., *at night, by night.*
subsidium, -ī, n., *reserve, reinforcement, assistance. subsidiary.*

fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee.* [**fugō**].
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum, *take back, receive*; **sē recipere**, *betake oneself, retreat.* [**capiō**].

Exercises

278. Inflect in the past subjunctive, active and passive, **recipiō, iubeō, fugō, pellō,** and **circumveniō.**

279. 1. Tibi imperāverant nē bellum in reliquum tempus cum sociīs populī Rōmānī gererēs. 2. Imperātor lēgātum noctū praemīsit, quī equitēs per angustiās trādūceret. 3. Facilem aditum repperit, ut oppidum celeriter expugnāret (*see 280*). 4. Hostēs ita fortiter pugnāvērunt ut nostrī pulsī ūsque ad castra sua fugerent. 5. Praetor tantum dētrīmentum accēpit ut sē recipere cōgerētur. 6. Cōnsul ā tantā multitūdine hostium circumventus est ut subsidium ā collēgā peteret. 7. Hostēs tam propinquī sunt ut signa eōrum videāmus. 8. Rēx ita potēns est ut societātem nōbīscum facere nōn cupiat. 9. Tam diū ibi mānsērunt ut in oppidum simul cum cēterīs legiōnibus nōn reciperentur.

10. Nēmō est tam audāx quī noctū iter faciat (*see 281*).
11. Nihil tam certum est quod numquam dubitētur.

280. Clauses of Result. — In sentence 3 the clause **ut . . . expugnāret** expresses the result of the finding of the approach, and is to be translated *so that he captured.* Notice that the other sentences which contain clauses of result have in the principal clause a word that is translated with *so.* The presence of such a word is usually a safe indication that a following clause expresses result rather than purpose.

Observe carefully sentences 8 and 9. How does a negative clause of result differ from a negative clause of purpose?

Notice that the subjunctive of result may be translated by the English indicative, but not the subjunctive of purpose.

281. Relative Clauses of Result. — In sentence 10 the relative clause **quī . . . faciat** expresses result, and is to be translated *that he marches.* Notice that **ut . . . faciat** would express the same idea. Classify the relative clauses in sentences 2 and 11.

282. 1. The danger was so great that the praetor sent reinforcements at once. 2. We shall retreat,[1] that we may not be surrounded. 3. The army retreated at night, so that it did not suffer great loss. 4. They were men of so great bravery that no one of them fled. 5. The road was so easy that few were exhausted. 6. Who is so bold that[2] he does not avoid the perils of the night? 7. When the boy came, I opened the letter instantly. 8. Hannibal desires to contend with the Romans, in order that he may destroy the dictator's army.

---

[1] Use **recipiō** (*we shall betake ourselves*).
[2] Remember that there are two ways of putting this in Latin.

LESSON XLI

283. Present and Past Subjunctive of *sum*. — Learn the present and past subjunctive of **sum** (section 493).

Notice that the vowel before the personal endings is long, except in the usual places.

The past can be remembered by associating it with the present infinitive, as in the case of the regular conjugations.

284. Vocabulary

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle*.
aequus, -a, -um, *level, fair, favorable. equity*.
condiciō, condiciōnis, f., *terms, condition*.
rēs gestae, rērum gestārum, f. pl., *deeds, achievements*.[1]

accidō, accidere, accidī, *happen. accident*.
effugiō, effugere, effūgī, *flee from, escape*. [**ex** + **fugiō**].
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductum, *lead into, draw*. [**in** + **dūcō**].

Exercises

285. 1. Hannibal effēcit ut bellum contrā Rōmānōs susciperent (*see 286*). 2. Hīs rēbus[2] effectum est ut exercitus sine dētrīmentō noctū effugeret. 3. Accidit[3] ut praetor in angustiis circumventus pellerētur. 4. Accidit[3] ut in[4] īnsidiās indūcātur. 5. Hannibal in Italiā rēs tam bene gessit ut nēmō eī in aciē[5] resisteret. 6. Ille clārus vir ā senātū petiit nē obsidēs redderentur. 7. Accidit ut aciēs in aequō

---

[1] Literally *things carried on*.

[2] **Rēs** has even greater flexibility of meaning than *thing*. It has been called a blank check, to be filled out to meet the requirements of the passage in which it occurs. Here **rēbus** may be translated *means*.

[3] Is this present or perfect ? See section 274.

[4] Notice that the same preposition often appears in a Latin verb and a phrase modifying the verb.

[5] That is *in a pitched battle*.

locō cōnstituerētur. 8. Collēgam praemīsit, quī cum hostibus contenderet. 9. Postulāvimus ut condiciōnēs essent aequae. 10. Efficiam ut meae rēs gestae semper sint in vestrā memoriā. 11. Tantum erat perīculum ut dictātor sē reciperet.

286. Substantive Clauses of Result. — In sentence 1 **ut . . . susciperent** tells what Hannibal brought about (*brought it about that they undertook*); it is therefore a substantive clause, the object of **effēcit**. In sentence 2 **ut . . . effugeret** tells what was brought about (*it was brought about that the army escaped*); it is therefore a substantive clause, the subject of **effectum est**. So in sentence 3 the subject of **accidit** is the clause **ut . . . pellerētur**. An **ut**-clause used as subject or object of a verb expressing accomplishment or as subject of a verb expressing occurrence is called a substantive clause of result. Note the Latin verbs which take a clause of result as subject or object.

Classify all subordinate clauses in the sentences above.

287. 1. It often happens that a prisoner escapes. 2. He demanded that fair terms be given. 3. It happened that the reserves were near. 4. He had brought it[1] about that we escaped without loss. 5. After that time we were not often drawn into an ambush. 6. The approach was so easy that the town was quickly taken. 7. They demand to be led into line of battle. 8. So it happened that all fled at night. 9. This night will destroy the memory of his great achievements. 10. By this means it was brought about that Hannibal was put in command of the army.

---

[1] Omit.

LESSON XLII

288. Pronominal Adjectives. — Learn the declension of **ūnus**, *one*; **alius**, *other*; **alter**, *the other*; and **uter**, *which?* (section 465).

Notice that these adjectives have the regular forms of the first and second declensions, with the following exceptions: —

1. The ending of the genitive singular is **ĭus** in all genders.
2. The ending of the dative singular is **ī** in all genders.
3. **Alius** has the ending **ud** in the neuter nominative and accusative singular.

The plural is entirely regular, and for this reason it is not given in the paradigms.

What three pronouns have the ending **ĭus** in the genitive singular and the ending **ī** in the dative singular? What two pronouns are like **alius** in having the ending **ud** in the neuter? What three others end in **d**?

The other words in the vocabulary below are declined like **ūnus** or **uter**. It is important that the ten adjectives be remembered together.

289. Vocabulary

alius, alia, aliud, *other, another*[1]; **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . others*. *alias*.

alter, altera, alterum, *the other*.[1] *alternate*.

uter, utra, utrum, *which?* (of two).[2]

uterque, utraque, utrumque, *each* (of two), *both*.

neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither*. *neutral*.

ūllus, -a, -um, *any*.

nūllus, -a, -um, *no, none*. *nullify*.

sōlus, -a, -um, *alone*. *solitude*.

tōtus, -a, -um, *whole, entire*. *total*.

ūnus, -a, -um, *one, only*. *unify*.

---

[1] Notice that **alter** is used when two persons or things are thought of, **alius** when more than two. The plural **aliī** means (some) *other*, while **cēterī** means (all) *the other*.

[2] What word must be used to ask *which?* when more than two persons or things are thought of?

Exercises

290. Decline together in both numbers **nūllus aditus, tōtus diēs**; and in the singular **uter puer, alter frāter.**

291. 1. Sunt quī nūllās condiciōnēs postulent (*see 292*). 2. Nōn multī erant quī sine ūllō vulnere effugerent. 3. Nēmō erat quī vulnerātus aciē excēderet. 4. Quis est quī dē imperātōris virtūte dubitet? 5. Hannibal est ūnus vir quī dē victōriā nōn dēspēret. 6. Nōn facile est noctū fugere. 7. Neuter cōnsulum ab alterō subsidium petiit. 8. Sibi sōlī cōnsulit, aliōs servāre nōn potest. 9. Tantum erat dētrīmentum ut cēterī sē recipere cōgerentur. 10. Propter suās rēs gestās dictātor sōlus tōtī exercituī praefectus erat. 11. Eōrum frātrum utrum revocāvērunt? Utrumque. 12. Aliī effugiunt, aliī capiuntur. 13. In utrāque parte flūminis praesidium cōnstitūtum erit.

292. Descriptive Relative Clauses. — In sentence 1 **sunt quī postulent** may be translated *there are men who demand, there are some who demand, there are those who demand.* Notice that the omitted antecedent of **quī** is indefinite, and that the verb of the relative clause is in the subjunctive. A clause which describes the person or thing denoted by an indefinite antecedent is called a descriptive clause. Observe carefully what expressions are followed by a descriptive clause; and notice that *there* is used in translating most of them, and that the relative clause is necessary to complete the meaning of the sentence.

293. 1. He defeated the other consul without any loss. 2. Some were drawn into an ambush, others escaped. 3. On which wing will the reserves be stationed? 4. While the enemy were waiting for night, we found another level approach. 5. It happened that the army of each consul was destroyed. 6. Neither of the consuls carried things on so

successfully that he retained the favor of the whole state. 7. Scipio was the only general who defeated Hannibal. 8. There is no one who surpasses him. 9. There are those who never speak about their own deeds. 10. The thing was so easy that I did it alone.

LESSON XLIII

294. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longus, *long.*	long**ior**, *longer.*	long**issimus**, *longest.*
nōbilis, *noble.*	nōbili**or**, *nobler.*	nōbili**ssimus**, *noblest.*
audāx, *bold.*	audāci**or**, *bolder.*	audāci**ssimus**, *boldest.*
potēns, *powerful.*	potenti**or**, *more powerful.*	potenti**ssimus**, *most powerful.*

Notice that there are three degrees of comparison, as in English, and learn the endings of the comparative and superlative.

295. Declension of the Comparative. — Learn the declension of **longior** (section 471).

Notice that the comparative is declined like third-declension nouns with genitive plural in **um**.

296. Declension of the Superlative. — The superlative is declined like **bonus**.

297. Absolute Comparative and Superlative

The comparative is sometimes used to denote an unusual or excessive degree: **longior**, *longer than usual, rather long, too long.*

The superlative is often used to denote merely a very high degree: **longissimus**, *very long.*

298. Vocabulary

item, adv., *likewise*.
longē, adv., *far*, *by far*. [**longus**].
nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam, *not only . . . but even*, *not only . . . but also*.
opera, -ae, f., *effort*, *services*. [**opus**].
quam, adv., *than*.
quā rē, *on account of which thing*, *why*, *wherefore*, *therefore*.
satis, indeclinable noun and adv., *enough*, *sufficiently*. *satisfaction*.

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *be away*, *be absent*, *be distant*. [**ab** + **sum**].
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum, *overwhelm*, *crush*. [**premō**].
pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place*, *pitch* (a camp). *position*.

Exercises

299. Compare **clārus, certus, aequus.**

Decline together **audācius cōnsilium, potentior cīvis, nōbilior mulier, longissimum iter, illa nōbilissima urbs, hic potentissimus vir.**

300. 1. Scīpiō apud Rōmānōs erat longē nōbilissimus, apud Karthāginiēnsīs Hannibal. 2. Utrīus nōmen erat clārius? 3. Neuter eōrum est clārior quam alter. 4. Post hoc proelium Hannibal Etrūriam petiit, quae nōn longē aberat. 5. Longum est[1] dē aliīs Hannibalis victōriīs scrībere; iam satis dē ēius rēbus gestīs dictum est. 6. Nōn sōlum īnsidiās effūgimus quās equitēs parāverant, sed etiam hostīs ipsōs in aciē oppressimus. 7. Neque ūllus nūntius certior quam hic esse potest. 8. Socii nostrī tōtās cōpiās auxiliō (*see 301*) mittunt. 9. Hae cōpiae sunt auxiliō nōbīs (*see 302*). 10. Quā rē uterque dux castra aequiōre locō[2] posuit. 11. Cōnsul ūnam legiōnem praesidiō relinquit. 12. Meā operā effēcistis ut aequissimae condiciōnēs pācis impetrārentur. 13. Hannibalī nōmen populī Rōmānī est odiō.[3]

---

[1] *it is long*, that is *it would be tedious*.
[2] When **locus** is used, the place where is commonly expressed by the ablative without in.
[3] *for hatred*, that is *an object of hatred*.

301. Dative of Purpose or Tendency. — The dative **auxiliō** in sentence 8 expresses the purpose of the allies in sending their forces (*for aid, as aid*), and in sentence 9 it tells to what the forces tend. Note the nouns that are used in this construction, and the verbs with which they are used.

302. Double Dative Construction. — The dative of purpose or tendency is often accompanied by another dative, which denotes the person concerned, as in sentence 9 (*for aid to us, an aid to us*).

303. 1. There is no other danger that I fear. 2. A very powerful king will come to our aid.[1] 3. Not only are you very famous, but you also have more powerful friends than I. 4. Therefore your services will be an aid to me. 5. It happened that they were drawn into an alliance with another more powerful state. 6. We have no soldier in[2] the whole army who is bolder. 7. Hannibal was an object of hatred to the Romans. 8. The entire war will be finished by this man alone. 9. Some escaped, others were overwhelmed by the violecne of the river. 10. The elephant is not far enough away. 11. Hannibal, and his brother likewise, demanded more favorable terms.

HANNIBAL IN THE SECOND PUNIC WAR

Hannibal pugnāverat ad Rhodanum cum P. Cornēliō Scīpiōne cōnsule eumque pepulerat. Cum eōdem illō imperātōre Clastidiī iterum contendit, et eum vulnerātum inde ac fugātum dīmittit. Īdem Scīpiō cum collēgā Ti. Longō apud[3] Trebiam contrā eum vēnit. Cum hīs Hannibal contendit; utrōsque vīcit. Ubi hiems cōnfecta est, Appennīnum superāvit petēns Etrūriam. Hōc in itinere C. Flāminium cōnsulem apud Trasu-

[1] See section 300, sentence 9.

[2] When **tōtus** is used, the place where is commonly expressed by the ablative without **in**.

[3] **apud** here has the same meaning as **ad** above.

mennum cum exercitū īnsidiīs circumventum occīdit, posteāque C. Centēnium praetōrem cum dēlēctā manū equitum auxiliō Flāminiō ab collēgā missā. Inde in Āpūliam pervēnit. Ibi eī occurrērunt C. Terentius Varrō et L. Aemilius Paulus cōnsulēs. Utrīusque exercitūs ūnō proeliō fugāvit, Paulum occīdit.

Post hanc pugnam Rōmam iter facere coepit. Per multōs diēs in propinquīs urbī montibus castra habuit. Posteā sē Capuam recēpit. Q. Fabius Maximus dictātor in itinere eī occurrit. Hīc ā Fabiō īnsidiīs circumventus noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs per angustiās effūgit. Deinde M. Minucium Rūfum, quī partī exercitūs Rōmānī praefectus erat, fugāvit. Ti. Semprōnium Gracchum, iterum cōnsulem, in īnsidiās inductum occīdit. M. Claudium Mārcellum cōnsulem interfēcit. Longum est dē omnibus proeliīs scrībere. Quā rē satis est hoc ūnum dīcere: in Italiā nēmō eī in aciē restitit, nēmō contrā eum post Cannēnsem pugnam in aequō locō castra posuit. Tantus ille fuit.

Tandem in Āfricam revocātus est, ut patriam dēfenderet. Bellum gessit contrā P. Scīpiōnem, fīlium ēius Scīpiōnis quem ipse prīmum apud Rhodanum, deinde apud Padum, tum apud Trebiam fugāverat. Ab eō cupīvit pācem impetrāre, ut cōpiās suās augēret. Ad conloquium vēnit, ad condiciōnēs Scīpiōnis nōn vēnit. Post paucōs diēs ad Zamam cum eōdem Scīpiōne contendit; pulsus Hadrūmētum magnīs itineribus pervēnit, quod oppidum ab eō locō longē aberat. In hāc fugā Numidae, quī simul cum eō ex aciē excesserant, īnsidiās parāvērunt; quōs nōn sōlum effūgit, sed etiam ipsōs oppressit. Postquam reliquī ex fugā in ūnum locum convēnērunt, statim novum exercitum comparāvit. Dum hoc facit, Karthāginiēnsēs pācem cum Rōmānīs fēcērunt.

Posteā lēgātī Karthāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī ā senātū peterent ut captīvī redderentur. Quibus hoc respōnsum datum est: "Captīvōs nōn remittēmus; nam Hannibalem,

cūius operā susceptum est bellum, cuique nōmen Rōmānum est odiō, ūsque ad hoc tempus exercitūs vestrī ducem habētis, itemque frātrem ēius Māgōnem." Karthāginiēnsēs postquam hoc respōnsum cognōvērunt, Hannibalem domum et Māgōnem revocāvērunt. Hannibal ubi Karthāginem vēnit, rēx factus est.

LESSON XLIV

304. Superlative in *rimus*. — Adjectives in **er** have in the superlative the ending **rimus**, which is added directly to the **er**: —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
līber, *free.*	līberior.	līberrimus.
crēber, *frequent.*	crēbrior.	crēberrimus.
ācer, *sharp.*	ācrior.	ācerrimus.

305. Superlative in *limus*. — The following adjectives have in the superlative the ending **limus**: —

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, *easy.*	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, *difficult.*	difficilior.	difficillimus.
similis, *like.*	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, *unlike.*	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
humilis, *low.*	humilior.	humillimus.

306. Vocabulary

difficilis, difficile, *difficult.* [facilis].
similis, simile, with dat.,[1] *like. assimilate.*
dissimilis, dissimile, with dat., *unlike.* [similis].
humilis, humile, *low, humble. humiliate.*
castellum, -ī, n., *stronghold. castle.*
facile, adv., *easily.* [facilis].
magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy*; also *magistrate.*
mūnus, mūneris, n., *gift. munificent.*
spēs, -eī, f., *hope.* [dēspērō].
ultimus, -a, -um, *furthermost, extreme. ultimatum.*

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *come to, approach.* [excēdō].
aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum, *build. edifice.*

[1] See section 89.

Exercises

307. Compare **integer** and **miser.**

Decline together **ācrior exercitus, līberior diēs, difficilius tempus, facillima victōria, iste homō ācerrimus.**

308. 1. Hannibal nōn sōlum in bellō sed etiam in magistrātū rēs bene gerēbat. 2. Quā rē opera ēius in difficillimīs rēbus petēbātur. 3. Neque ūllus alius dux erat cūius in virtūte Karthāginiēnsēs spem pōnerent. 4. Hannibal clārior est quam Scīpiō. 5. Hannibal clārior est Scīpiōne (*see 309*). 6. Nāvēs quās barbarī aedificābant humiliōrēs erant nostrīs.[1] 7. Ultimum Italiae oppidum nōn longē abest. 8. Uter frātrum patrī similior est? Uterque est eī dissimillimus. 9. Ad alteram oppidī partem cum tōtō exercitū accessit et portam occupāvit. 10. Captīvī miserrimī fugientēs comprehēnsī sunt. 11. Quid morte est certius? 12. Rēx Hannibalī ūnum castellum mūneri dabit.

309. Ablative of Comparison. — The ablative **Scīpiōne** in sentence 5 expresses the same idea as **quam Scīpiō** in sentence 4, and is to be translated in the same way. Notice that when **quam** is used, the word with it is in the same case as the word that denotes the other of the two persons or things compared.

310. 1. The humbler citizens likewise, who were being crushed by men of noble birth, placed their hope in his justice. 2. No route is more difficult than[2] this. 3. Neither of the magistrates is more powerful than I. 4. Some sons are very like their fathers, others very unlike. 5. It can be built easily enough. 6. The stronghold that I had built was given to Hannibal as a gift. 7. I fled alone into the

---

[1] **nostrīs** agrees with **nāvibus**, which is understood.

[2] Remember that there are two ways of putting this in Latin. What determines the gender and number of the Latin word for *this?*

furthermost forests. 8. Hannibal's life was more glorious than his death. 9. The most active of the soldiers approach the town.

HANNIBAL'S ELEPHANT AND DRIVER

LESSON XLV

311. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good.*	melior, *better.*	optimus, *best.*
malus, *bad.*	pēior, *worse.*	pessimus, *worst.*
magnus, *great.*	māior, *greater.*	maximus, *greatest.*
parvus, *little.*	minor, *less.*	minimus, *least.*
multus, *much.*	plūs, *more.*	plūrimus, *most.*
senex, *old.*	senior *or* māior nātū,[1] *older.*	maximus nātū, *oldest.*
iuvenis, *young.*	iūnior *or* minor nātū, *younger.*	minimus nātū, *youngest.*

Learn thoroughly the comparison of these seven adjectives.

Notice how largely the comparatives and superlatives of these words are used in English, either in their Latin forms or in derivatives: ***major, minor, plus, minus, senior, junior, maximum, minimum; ameliorate, plural, majority, minority, plurality, optimist, pessimist.***

312. Declension of *plūs*. — Learn the declension of **plūs** (section 472).

In the singular **plūs** is used only as a substantive. Notice that it has **ium** in the genitive plural, but **a** in the neuter nominative and accusative.

[1] **nātū** is ablative, and the literal meaning is *greater in respect of birth*, that is *greater in age.*

313. Vocabulary

malus, -a, -um, *bad. malefactor.*
iuvenis, iuvenis,[1] *young. juvenile.*
senex, senis,[1] *old. senile.*
posterus, -a, -um, *following, next.* [post].
īnferior, īnferius, comparative, *lower.*
superior, superius, comparative, *higher*; also *former.*
summus, -a, -um, *highest, utmost. summit.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, *outermost, last. extremity.*
decem, indeclinable, *ten. decimal.*
multō, *by much, much.*
fīnis, fīnis, m., *end*; **fīnēs** (pl.), *boundaries, territory. final.*
māiōrēs, māiōrum, m. pl., *ancestors.*
post, adv.,[2] *after, afterward.*

Exercises

314. 1. Hannibal māior nātū fuit quaṃ Scīpiō. 2. Hannibal māior nātū fuit quam Scīpiō decem annīs (*see 315*). 3. Karthāginiēnsēs in extrēmā spē salūtis ēius operam petiērunt. 4. Multīs post annīs[3] Hannibal magistrātus creātus est. 5. Nāvēs barbarōrum multō humiliōrēs sunt quam nostrae. 6. Hostēs oppressī ad nāvīs fūgērunt quās in īnferiōre parte flūminis nōn longē ā marī aedificāverant. 7. Hoc iter tantō difficilius est ut melius sit alterum temptāre. 8. Rōmānī in fīnibus hostium castra in superiōre locō semper pōnēbant. 9. Senex[4] vīrīs superiōrum annōrum revocāre nōn potest. 10. Quā rē māiōrēs nostrī malōs cīvīs cīvitāte expellēbant. 11. Nōn plūs animī[5] quam fideī habētis. 12. In summō perīculō omnem spem in virtūte sōlā pōnēbāmus. 13. Nōn multō post rēx Hannibalī maximum castellum mūnerī dedit.

---

[1] This is the genitive singular. **Iuvenis** and **senex** have **um** in the genitive plural, not **ium**.
[2] Remember that this word may be used as a preposition also.
[3] What case follows **post** when it is used as a preposition?
[4] Here a noun, *old man*.
[5] *more of courage*, that is *more courage*.

315. Ablative of Measure of Difference. — In sentence 2 the ablative **decem annīs** tells how much older Hannibal was (*older by ten years, ten years older*).

Find four other instances of this use of the ablative in the sentences above.

316. 1. Grain was found easily enough in the enemy's territory. 2. A lower place was chosen, that they might not be far away from the river. 3. The following day was fixed for the battle. 4. A few days after he came to the furthermost boundaries of Gaul. 5. In many things[1] the good man is not much better than the bad, but in most things they are very unlike. 6. The good man has more friends. 7. Therefore our ancestors had not only the greatest resources, but also the highest authority. 8. This is more like your former plan. 9. I am ten years younger than you, but my influence is much greater. 10. My brother likewise is in the utmost peril.

LESSON XLVI

317. Regular Comparison of Adverbs

	POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
ADJ.	lātus, *wide.*	lātior.	lātissimus.
ADV.	lātē, *widely.*	lātius, *more widely.*	lātissimē, *most widely.*
ADJ.	līber, *free.*	līberior.	līberrimus.
ADV.	līberē, *freely.*	līberius, *more freely.*	līberrimē, *most freely.*
ADJ.	ācer, *sharp.*	ācrior.	ācerrimus.
ADV.	ācriter, *sharply.*	ācrius, *more sharply.*	ācerrimē, *most sharply.*
ADJ.	fortis, *brave.*	fortior.	fortissimus.
ADV.	fortiter, *bravely.*	fortius, *more bravely.*	fortissimē, *most bravely.*

[1] Use the ablative of respect.

Notice that the forms of the adverb come from the corresponding forms of the adjective: —

1. The positive of adverbs formed from adjectives of the first and second declensions usually has the ending **ē**. The positive of adverbs formed from adjectives of the third declension usually has the ending **iter**.

2. The comparative of the adverb is the same as the neuter of the comparative of the adjective.

3. The superlative of the adverb is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing **us** to **ē**.

318. Irregular Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
benĕ, *well.*	melius, *better.*	optimē, *best.*
malĕ, *badly.*	pēius, *worse.*	pessimē, *worst.*
multum, *much.*	plūs, *more.*	plūrimum, *most.*
diū, *long.*	diūtius, *longer.*	diūtissimē, *longest.*

Notice that only the positive of **bene** and **male** is formed irregularly, and that **multum** has the form of the neuter of the adjective in all three degrees.

319. Vocabulary

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad.* ***latitude.***
lātē, adv., *widely.*
līberē, adv., *freely.*
ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.*
male, adv., *badly, unsuccessfully.*
multum, adv., *much.* [**multus**].
fortis, forte, *brave.*
medius, -a, -um, *middle,* ***the middle of. medium.***
prūdēns, prūdentis, *wise.* ***prudence.***
cūra, -ae, f., *care.* ***accurate.***
labor, labōris, m., *labor, exertion.*

respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum, *reply, answer.* [**respōnsum**].
sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, *take, assume;* **supplicium sūmere,** *exact a penalty, inflict punishment.*

Exercises

320. 1. Māiōrēs nostrī dē malīs cīvibus ultimum supplicium sūmēbant. 2. Cum virtūte pugnāvērunt. 3. In mediā

aciē[1] fortiter pugnāvērunt. 4. Hostibus in summō monte[1] fortissimē resistēbant. 5. Diūtissimē[2] maximā cum virtūte resistēbant. 6. Maximā virtūte (*see 321*) resistēbant. 7. Omnēs etiam fortissimī dē vītā dēspērābant. 8. Nēmō iuvenis prūdentior est sene. 9. Timōre līberātus multō līberius respondit. 10. Imperātor per posterum annum rēs male gessit. 11. Ducem dē īnsidiīs certiōrem faciunt.[3] 12. Paucīs post diēbus ad hostium fīnīs accessit et oppida eōrum longē lātēque incendit. 13. Castellum minimō labōre aedificātum est. 14. Litterās magnā cum cūrā scrībam. 15. Tēcum multum esse cupit, sed patrī suō nōn facile persuādēre potest.

321. Ablative of Manner. — The ablative **maximā virtūte** in sentence 6 expresses the manner in which they resisted, and is to be translated *with the greatest bravery* or *very bravely*. Notice that the same idea is expressed by the adverb **fortissimē** in sentence 4 and by **maximā cum virtūte** in sentence 5. When there is an adjective modifying the noun, manner may be expressed either with or without **cum**; otherwise **cum** is regularly used.

Find all the ablatives of manner in the sentences above.

322. 1. I will do everything carefully[4] and diligently. 2. With great exertion I finished the work after midnight.[5] 3. After I had informed him about this affair, he answered very freely. 4. You have done a most difficult thing with the utmost care, and you have done it well. 5. He has given you these broad fields as a gift. 6. That magistrate was more loved by the humbler citizens. 7. The oldest are not

---

[1] Not *the middle line of battle*, but *the middle of the line of battle*, that is, *the center* (the military term for the middle of an army drawn up for battle). Certain other adjectives can be used in Latin to denote a part: as **reliquus**, *the rest of*; **summus**, *the top of*.

[2] See section 297.

[3] *make more certain*, that is, *inform*.

[4] Use the ablative of manner.

[5] That is, *the middle of the night*.

always the wisest. 8. The ten legions which had been stationed in a lower position were in like danger. 9. These brave men fought fiercely, but they had no hope. 10. We took the plunder and fled. 11. There is nothing that is more unlike war. 12. The former victory was much[1] more widely reported.

LESSON XLVII

323. Perfect Subjunctive. — Learn the perfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō** (sections 490, 491); and the perfect subjunctive of **sum** (section 493).

How does the perfect subjunctive active differ from the future perfect indicative active?

Notice that the perfect subjunctive passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the present subjunctive of **sum**.

324. Vocabulary

-ne, in indirect questions, *whether*.
absēns, absentis,[2] *absent*. [**absum**].
adversārius, -ī, m., *opponent, adversary*.
enim, conj., *for*.
exitus, -**ūs**, m., *outlet, exit*. [**aditus**].
hospitium, -ī, n., *hospitality*.
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither*. [**hic**].
prīmō, adv., *at first*. [**prīmus**].
venēnum, -ī, n., *poison*. ***venom***.
vīvus, -**a**, -**um**, *alive*. [**vīta**].

intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum, *understand*. ***intellect***.
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum, *disregard, neglect*.
probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum, *approve*. ***approbation***.
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, *loose*; **nāvem solvere**, *set sail*. ***absolution***.

Exercises

325. Inflect in the perfect subjunctive, active and passive, **neglegō, probō, praeficiō, impediō**, and **prohibeō**.

---

[1] Not **multum**. See section 315.

[2] **Absēns** is the present participle of **absum**, and therefore has the ending **e** in the ablative singular.

326. 1. Ubi est Hannibal? 2. Lēgātī quaerunt ubi sit Hannibal (*see 327*). 3. Rēx intellegēbat ubi esset Hannibal, sed dubitābat eōs certiōrēs facere. 4. Male iūs hospitī cōnservābit; adversāriīs enim[1] Hannibalis dēmōnstrābit ubi ille habitet. 5. Quā rē hī lēgātī hūc Rōmā missī sunt? 6. Hannibal statim intellegit quā rē lēgātī Rōmānōrum eō missī sint. 7. Nē vīvus caperētur, venēnum sūmpsit. 8. Sīc fortissimus dux post summōs labōrēs ē vītā excessit. 9. Haec rēs mihi cūrae semper erit, neque eam absēns neglegam. 10. Oppidum decem lātōs exitūs habet. 11. Quaerō nāvemne post mediam noctem solverit. 12. Prīmō quaerēmus quae cōnsilia probāta sint. 13. Omnēs prūdentēs eōdem animō sunt dē hīs cōnsiliīs pessimīs. 14. Ūsque ad fīnem posterī diēī ācerrimē restitimus.

327. Indirect Questions. — Sentence 1 is a direct question, or one that gives the exact words of the person asking it. In sentence 2 the same question is expressed differently in a subordinate clause, the object of **quaerunt** (*ask where Hannibal is*). An interrogative subordinate clause is called an indirect question.

Find all the other indirect questions in the sentences above, and notice that an indirect question can be recognized by these features: —

1. It is a substantive clause.
2. It is introduced by an interrogative word.
3. Its verb is in the subjunctive.

328. 1. I will learn who has been with him most. 2. Hannibal's adversaries wish to inflict the same punishment on[2] his absent brother. 3. At first the king approved my plans, but afterward disregarded them. 4. Both old and young were received with[3] hospitality. 5. The best opin-

[1] **Enim**, like **autem**, cannot stand first in a sentence or clause, but is usually the second word.

[2] See section 320, sentence 1.

[3] Do not use **cum**.

ions are often not defended most freely. 6. He cannot find out where the lower outlet of the marsh is. 7. For who is able to say whether the marsh has any outlet? 8. He understands why they have come hither. 9. Our ancestors were much more widely feared than we. 10. No one was left alive on the outermost wall. 11. Who loosed that prisoner? No one answers. 12. At last they understand why he has always had poison with him.

THE LAST YEARS OF HANNIBAL

Nōn sōlum in bellō Hannibal fuit magnā dīligentiā, sed etiam in magistrātū. Nam ipse effēcit ut opēs patriae ēius augērentur. Quā dē causā lēgātī Rōmā Karthāginem vēnērunt. Hannibal statim intellegit quā rē hī missī sint. Itaque, nē lēgātīs trāderētur Rōmamque dūcerētur, in Syriam ad Antiochum fūgit. Quod ubi Poenī cognōvērunt, nāvīs mīsērunt, quae eum comprehenderent; domum ēius occupātam dēlēvērunt, ipsum ē cīvitāte expulērunt.

Posteā autem Hannibal cum paucīs nāvibus ad Āfricam accessit, ut bellum contrā Rōmānōs renovāret. Nam Antiochō, cūius in auxiliō magnam spem pōnēbat, iam persuāserat ut cum exercitibus in Italiam venīret. In eandem spem Māgōnem frātrem suum addūxit, quem ad sē vocāverat. Id ubi Poenī cognōvērunt, dē Māgōne absente idem supplicium sūmpsērunt quod dē Hannibale sūmpserant. Uterque dē salūte suā dēspērāvit ac nāvem solvit. Hannibal ad Antiochum pervēnit, Māgō ā servīs suīs interfectus est.

Antiochus prīmō cōnsilia Hannibalis probābat, posteā autem eadem neglegēbat. Quem tamen Hannibal nūllā in rē dēseruit. Praefectus erat paucīs nāvibus, quās ex Syriā in Asiam[1] dūcere iussus erat, iīsque cum Rhodiōrum classe contendit.

[1] Asia Minor is meant.

Suī[1] multitūdine adversāriōrum superātī sunt, ipse in eō cornū ubi rem gessit victor fuit. Tandem ad Prūsiam in Pontum pervēnit, apud quem eōdem animō in[2] Italiam fuit quemque contrā Rōmānōs armāvit. Ēius rēgis adversāriōs terrā marīque[3] saepe pepulit.

Quae dum in Asiā geruntur, accidit ut lēgātī Prūsiae Rōmae essent. Ūnus ex iis senātum certiōrem fēcit dē amīcitiā quae inter Prūsiam et Hannibalem erat. Patrēs lēgātōs in Asiam mīsērunt, quī ab rēge peterent ut Hannibalem trāderet. Hīs petentibus Prūsiās haec respondit: "Ego quidem nihil faciam quod contrā iūs hospitī sit. Sī vōs ipsī illum comprehendere cupitis, nōn prohibēbō; locum ubi est facile inveniētis." Hannibal enim ūnō locō sē tenēbat, in castellō quod eī ā rēge datum erat mūnerī, idque sīc aedificāverat ut in omnibus partibus exitūs habēret.

Hūc ubi lēgātī Rōmānōrum vēnērunt ac multitūdine hominum domum ēius circumdedērunt, Hannibal dē salūte suā dēspērāns, nē vīvus in manūs hostium venīret, venēnum quod semper sēcum habēbat sūmpsit. Sīc vir fortissimus post multōs magnōsque labōrēs ē vītā excessit.

LESSON XLVIII

329. Past Perfect Subjunctive. — Learn the past perfect subjunctive, active and passive, of **amō**, **moneō**, **regō**, **audiō**, **capiō** (sections 490, 491); and the past perfect subjunctive of **sum** (section 493).

Notice that the tense-sign of the past perfect subjunctive active is **issē**, with **ē** shortened in the usual places; and that the past perfect subjunctive passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the past subjunctive of **sum**.

---

[1] *his men*, in contrast with **ipse**. [2] *toward*. [3] *by land and sea*.

330. Vocabulary

collis, collis, m., *hill*.
complūrēs, complūra, pl. adj.,[1] *several*. [plūs].
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*. *impetuous*.
incommodum, -ī, n., *misfortune*. *incommode*.
passus, -ūs, m., *pace* (two steps, about 5 feet in our measure).
rūrsus, adv., *again*.

committō, committere, commīsī, commissum, with proelium, *join battle, begin the battle*. [mittō].
sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum, *sustain*. [sub + teneō].

Exercises

331. Inflect in the past perfect subjunctive, active and passive, **solvō, recipiō, circumveniō, iubeō,** and **cōnservō**.

332. 1. Prīmō nōs, quī tē multum amāmus, cōnsilium tuum probābāmus. 2. Quaesīvī suppliciumne dē frātre meō absente sūmptum esset. 3. Ibi flūmen est decem passibus lātius. 4. Karthāginiēnsēs lātē quondam mare tenuerant. 5. Quaeram proeliumne in summō colle commissum sit. 6. Imperāverat enim complūribus tribūnīs mīlitum ut rūrsus impetum in mediam hostium aciem ācriter facerent.[2] 7. Equitēs tantā virtūte pugnābant ut adversārii impetum male sustinērent. 8. Nēmō intellegit quae fuerit causa illīus incommodī. 9. Nōn est prūdēns quī perīculum neglegat. 10. Etiam fortissimō salūs est cūrae.

333. Harmony of Tenses. — What determines whether the present or the past subjunctive shall be used in a subordinate clause? The use of the perfect and past perfect subjunctive is determined in the same way. We have, then, this rule for the harmony of tenses: The present or perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the principal verb represents a present or future action, the past or

[1] Declined like the plural of **plūs**. See section 312.
[2] **Impetum facere in** may be translated *charge upon*.

past perfect when the principal verb represents a past action. The present and past subjunctive represent an action at or after the time of the principal verb; the perfect and past perfect represent an action before the time of the principal verb. Clauses of purpose, therefore, regularly admit only the present and past subjunctive.

PRINCIPAL CLAUSE		SUBORDINATE CLAUSE	
present, future, future perfect	indicative	subjunctive	present (action at or after the time) perfect (action before the time)
past, perfect, past perfect	indicative	subjunctive	past (action at or after the time) past perfect (action before the time)

Explain the tense of each subjunctive in the sentences above, remembering that the time of both the principal and the subordinate verb must be considered: for example, **sūmptum esset** in sentence 2 is past perfect because it represents an action before the past time of the principal verb (**quaesīvī**).

Notice that **quī . . . amāmus** in sentence 1 is a subordinate clause, and that **amāmus** is indicative. The rule for the harmony of tenses does not mean that all verbs in subordinate clauses are subjunctive. Whether the subjunctive shall be used is determined by the rules for the subjunctive; if it is used, the tense is determined by the rule for the harmony of tenses.

Notice that the harmony of tenses in English is regularly the same as in Latin: *I ask where he is, I ask where he has been, I asked where he was, I asked where he had been.* But the English past in a subordinate clause may stand for the Latin perfect or past subjunctive, according to the tense of the principal verb: *I ask where he was* (perfect in Latin), *I asked where he was* (past in Latin).

334. 1. I come hither to inform you about my misfortune. 2. He asks which legion sustained the attack best. 3. A few paces[1] from this outlet he stationed several soldiers to

[1] Use the ablative of measure of difference.

defend it. 4. Do you see on which side of the hill our men have joined battle? 5. I had not understood why you were not answering more freely. 6. They will persuade you to undertake even greater labors. 7. Several days afterward he set sail; I never saw him again alive. 8. I asked whether the king had observed the rights of hospitality. 9. I do not see why the poison did not injure me.

LESSON XLIX

335. Cardinal Numerals. — Learn the cardinal numerals given in section 479.

Notice that the cardinal numerals from **ūndecim** to **septendecim** are compounds expressing addition, **-decim** standing for **decem**, as English *-teen* for *ten;* but that **duodēvīgintī**, **ūndēvīgintī** express subtraction.

What Latin ending corresponds, except in **vīgintī**, to English *-ty?*

What two Latin endings are used to denote hundreds?

Notice that the arrangement of numerals is mostly the same as in English: *twenty-one* or *one and twenty*, *one hundred one* or *one hundred and one;* but when there are more than two numerals **et** is not used: *one hundred twenty-one.*

What English words evidently derived from Latin cardinal numerals can you call to mind?

336. Declension of Cardinal Numerals. — Cardinal numerals are indeclinable, except **ūnus**, **duo**, **trēs**, the plural of **mīlle**, and the hundreds beginning with **ducentī**.

Review the declension of **ūnus** (section 465).

Learn the declension of **duo**, **trēs**, and the plural of **mīlle** (section 480).

The hundreds are declined like the plural of **bonus**, except that the ending of the genitive plural is **um** instead of **ōrum**.

Exercises

337. 1. Complūrīs centuriōnēs praemittit, quī cognōscant quid adversāriī faciant. 2. Impetūs eōrum quīnque diēs sustinuerāmus. 3. Duodecim diēbus post dux cum trīgintā mīlibus peditum et mīlle equitibus (*see 338*) nāvīs solvit. 4. Oppidum aberat tria mīlia passuum.[1] 5. Rēx Hannibalem sēcum multōs annōs tenuit neque iūs hospitī neglēxit. 6. Venēnum sēcum diem noctemque habēbat, nē vīvus caperētur. 7. Eum etiam absentem timēbitis. 8. Multa enim et magna incommoda iam accēpistis. 9. Exitus angustiārum ducentōs passūs lātus est. 10. Flūmen est ducenta mīlia passuum longum, ad mare duo mīlia passuum lātum. 11. Nōn cognōverat quis esset pater duōrum puerōrum.

338. Use of Cardinal Numerals. — Notice that the cardinal numerals, except the plural of **mīlle**, are adjectives, and follow the rule for the agreement of adjectives. The plural of **mīlle** is regularly used as a substantive, and is modified by a genitive: **cum mīlle equitibus**, *with a thousand horsemen*, as in English; but **cum trīgintā mīlibus peditum**, *with thirty thousands of foot-soldiers*, where we say *with thirty thousand foot-soldiers*.

339. Accusative of Extent or Duration. — Find all expressions of extent of space and duration of time in the sentences above, and notice what case is used in them.

340. 1. We had sent three soldiers hither to find out where the hill was. 2. I do not understand whether my plan was approved. 3. They retreated again two or three miles to the river. 4. The trench was four hundred and thirty paces long. 5. He remained there six days. 6. Finally

[1] *three thousand paces*, or *three miles*.

he joined battle with the enemy. 7. I asked why you had stayed in the city one whole night. 8. At first she will be at Rome for a few days; then she will come into the country. 9. The seven kings of Rome reigned two hundred and forty-four years.

LESSON L

341. Ordinal Numerals. — Learn the first ten ordinal numerals (section 479).

What English words evidently derived from these numerals can you call to mind?

All the ordinal numerals are declined like **bonus.**

342. Vocabulary

altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.* ***altitude.***
brevis, breve, *short.* ***brevity.***
honor, honōris, m., *honor.*
nātus, -a, -um, *born, old* (in exact statements of age). [**nātūra**].
pēs, pedis, m., *foot.* [**pedes**].
pūblicus, -a, -um, *of the state, public;* **rēs pūblica,** *public interest, commonwealth, republic.*
vetus, veteris,[1] *old* (not new). ***veteran.***

ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum, *snatch away, take away;* also *rescue.* ***rapine.***

Exercises

343. 1. Eō tempore (*see 344*) impetum fēcimus proeliumque commīsimus. 2. Posterō diē collem fossā trium mīlium passuum[2] mūnīvimus. 3. Brevī tempore complūra oppida maxima occupāvistī. 4. Paucīs annīs omnem Galliam in potestātem meam redēgeram. 5. Etiam adulēscēns trīs et vīgintī annōs nātus exercituī praefectus est. 6. Honōrem

[1] Learn the declension of this word (section 469). In what respects is it irregular?

[2] That is *three miles long.*

quī mihi datus est iste homō ēripiet. 7. Tertium Pūnicum bellum susceptum est annō quīnquāgēnsimō prīmō[1] postquam secundum cōnfectum est. 8. Dictātōrem creāre dēbētis, quī veterem auctōritātem reī pūblicae sustineat. 9. Hōc tempore annī flūmen est septem pedēs altum. 10. Clārissimus vir magistrātum sex annōs retinuit.

344. Ablative of Time. — **Eō tempore** in sentence 1 expresses the time at which the thing was done (*at that time*), and **brevī tempore** in sentence 3 expresses the time within which the thing was done (*in a short time*). Find all other examples of the ablative of time in the sentences above. Distinguish carefully between the accusative and the ablative in expressions of time: the accusative tells how long; the ablative tells when.

345. 1. Within ten years I shall receive the highest honors. 2. I marched day and night, that I might arrive at the time fixed. 3. The enemy had pitched camp five miles from this place. 4. I remained there nine days, and on the tenth day was rescued from[2] danger. 5. Do you ask at what time this great misfortune happened to the republic? 6. Within one year they again restored to me the old honors which you had taken away. 7. In the eighth year of the war the boy was eight years old. 8. Here the trench is two feet wider, but not much deeper. 9. Our pace is shorter than the Roman.

[1] *fifty-first*, but **quīnquāgēnsimō** is an ordinal numeral (*fiftieth*).
[2] **ex.**

HELMET FROM CANNAE

LESSON LI

346. Present Imperative. — Learn the present imperative, active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō** (sections 489, 490, 491); and the present imperative of **sum** (section 493).

347. Personal Endings. — Notice that the singular of the present imperative active has no personal ending, but is the present stem of the verb. What is the ending of the plural? What two other forms of the verb are the same as the singular of the present imperative passive? What other form is the same as the plural of the present imperative passive?

348. Irregular Forms. — **Dīcō, dūcō, faciō,** and **ferō** drop **e** in the singular of the present imperative active: **dīc, dūc, fac, fer.**

349. Vocabulary

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival.* [ad + veniō].
caedēs, caedis, f., *slaughter, carnage.* [occīdō].
cīvīlis, cīvīle, *civil.* [cīvis].
intereā, adv., *meanwhile.* [inter + is].
intrā, prep. with acc., *within.* [inter].
magis, adv., *more.* [magnus].
maximē, adv., *most, especially.* [magnus].
singulī, -ae, -a (pl.), *one by one, singly.*
ūniversus, -a, -um, *all together, in a body.* [ūnus].
uxor, uxōris, f., *wife.*

contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum, *hold, restrain.* [teneō].

Exercises

350. Inflect in the present imperative active **absum, contineō, faciō, dīcō, reperiō,** and **probō**; in the present imperative passive **dūcō, ēripiō, sustineō, circumveniō,** and **cōnservō.**

351. 1. Tū summōs honōrēs reī pūblicae pete. 2. Octō annīs post adventum suum cōnsul creātus est. 3. Dīc[1] mihi quō annō bellum cīvīle cōnfectum sit. 4. Revocāte animōs vestrōs ad memoriam ingentis illīus caedis quae eō tempore facta est. 5. Brevī tempore barbarī ad urbem ūniversī accēdent. 6. Ēripite uxōrēs vestrās ex perīculō. 7. Intereā mīlitēs intrā silvās continēte. 8. Nihil Rōmānī magis cupiēbant quam cum hoste vetere contendere. 9. Scīpiō singulīs cīvitātibus multa reddidit quae Karthāginiēnsēs ēripuerant. 10. Superiōribus temporibus iūra bellī maximē cōnservābāmus.

352. 1. Fellow-citizens,[2] rescue your country from the hands of the enemy. 2. Meanwhile hold the army within the camp and await my arrival. 3. Be with us on the seventh day. 4. Advise him especially to avoid[3] suspicion. 5. The elephants came into the line of battle one by one, and were stationed all together on the other wing. 6. We fear the carnage of civil war more than the violence of all our enemies. 7. Give him back the money at once, or I shall hand you over to the magistrate. 8. His wife was twenty-seven years old. 9. The water is almost three feet higher than it was at our arrival.

---

[1] *tell.* [2] See section 247. [3] See section 268.

ROMAN ROAD

LESSON LII

353. Indefinite Pronouns. — Learn (section 487) the declension of the following indefinite pronouns: —

quis (quī), quae *or* **qua, quid (quod),** *any, any one, anything.*
aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod), *some, some one, something.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), *each, each one, each thing.*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quōddam), *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing.*
quisquam, quicquam, *any one, anything.*

How does indefinite **quis** differ in declension from interrogative **quis**? How does it differ from **aliquis**?

Notice that **m** is changed to **n** before **d** in the declension of **quīdam**. In what other pronoun does the same change occur?

Notice that **quisquam** has no feminine and no plural.

The indefinite pronouns, except **quisquam**,[1] may be used as adjectives, and the feminine singular is generally used only as an adjective; where two forms are given, one of which is in parenthesis, the latter is regularly used as the adjective: **aliquid**, *something;* **aliquod bellum**, *some war.* Compare what is said about the adjective forms of **quis** in section 145.

354. Use of *quis* and *quisquam*. — The indefinite **quis** is used after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num**. **Quisquam** is used in sentences which express a negative idea.

Exercises

355. 1. Nē quid dētrīmentī[2] rēs pūblica acciperet, mīlitēs sē ā caede continēre iussī sunt. 2. Neque tam brevī tempore quisquam mē ex tantō perīculō ēripere potest. 3. Aliquō-

[1] **Ūllus** is the adjective corresponding to **quisquam**.
[2] *anything of loss*, that is *any loss*.

rum uxōrēs fugā salūtem petere coāctae sunt. 4. Miser sum eō incommodō. 5. Neque quicquam magis cupiō quam tēcum iter facere. 6. Imperātor ā mīlitibus tuīs appellātus es, quod nōmen tibi erat honōrī. 7. Tum quīdam adulēscēns ingentī magnitūdine corporis postulāvit ut fortissimus Rōmānōrum sēcum[1] pugnāret. 8. Sī quis virtūte maximē superat, dux creandus est. 9. Intereā ūniversī adventum cūiusque nūntī cum spē exspectāmus. 10. Neque quicquam auxilī ad eōs missūrus sum, quī mē ipsō potentiōrēs sunt. 11. Haec nova domus novem pedibus altior est quam illa vetus.

356. Review of Ablative Constructions. — Make a list of all the uses of the ablative that have been named up to this point, and find an example of each in section 355.

357. 1. I shall never report this to any one. 2. We retreated within the walls with some loss. 3. Each one looked out for himself. 4. I have not done anything worse than this. 5. I persuaded them not to inform any one. 6. In the fifth year of the civil war there was already some hope of peace. 7. He selects a certain young man, twenty years old, to announce this affair to his colleagues one by one. 8. If anything happens,[2] tell me at once. 9. There was a certain force in their reply.

SCIPIO, MARIUS, SULLA

Tertium Pūnicum bellum susceptum est annō quīnquāgēnsimō prīmō postquam secundum cōnfectum est. Cōnsulēs exercitum in Āfricam trādūxērunt atque Karthāginem oppug-

[1] *with him*, the **adulēscēns**. The reflexive in a subordinate clause may refer to the subject of its own clause or, if the subordinate clause expresses the thought of the subject of the principal clause, it may refer to that subject.

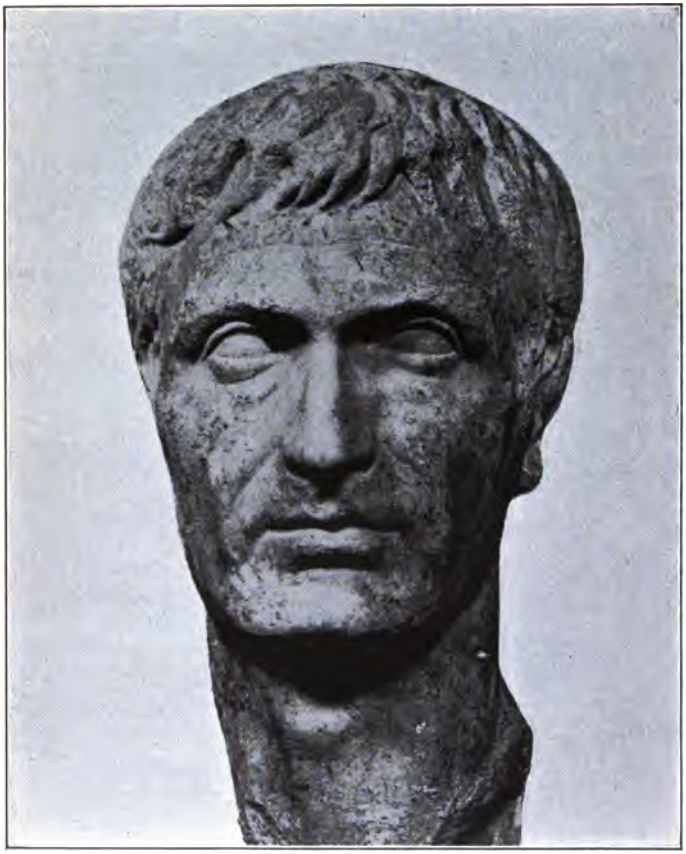
[2] See section 155.

nāvērunt. Ibi P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus, quī eō tempore tribūnus mīlitum erat, omnīs virtūte cōnsiliōque superāvit. Hunc Karthāginiēnsēs timēbant, neque quicquam magis eōrum ducēs vītābant quam cum Scīpiōne proelium committere. Posteā cōnsul creātus Karthāginem ā cīvibus ācerrimē dēfēnsam cēpit ac dēlēvit. Ingentem praedam ibi inventam cīvitātibus singulīs reddidit ex quibus Poenī eam cēperant. Hic quoque Scīpiō Āfricānus appellātus est.

Dum bellum in Numidiā cum rēge Iugurthā geritur, Cimbrī et Teutonēs aliaeque Germānōrum et Gallōrum gentēs fīnibus Italiae appropinquāvērunt complūrīsque Rōmānōrum exercitūs pepulērunt. Ingēns fuit Rōmae timor. Nam hominēs memoriam veteris incommodī retinēbant quod anteā urbs ā Gallīs accēperat. Itaque C. Marius, quī Iugurtham superāverat, iterum cōnsul est factus atque huic bellō praefectus. Paucīs annīs post proeliō cum Teutonibus contendit, quōrum ducenta mīlia occīdit, octōgintā mīlia cēpit. Intereā Cimbrī iam per Alpīs in Italiam vēnerant; quī ā C. Mariō et Q. Catulō cōnsulibus victī sunt. Hostium centum et quadrāgintā mīlia in pugnā aut in fugā occīsa sunt. Rōmānī mīlitēs ex utrōque exercitū trecentī sunt interfectī.

Tredecim post annīs bellum contrā Mithridātem, quī tum erat rēx Pontī, susceptum est. Eōdem annō prīmum Rōmānī bellum cīvīle gerere coepērunt. Bellī cīvilis C. Marius fuit causa. Nam imperium[1] bellī Mithridāticī, quod L. Cornēliō Sullae cōnsulī trāditum erat, Marius ipse postulāvit, eumque honōrem ēripere parābat. Quā rē Sulla, quī eō tempore exercitum in Campāniā tenēbat, cum legiōnibus suīs Rōmam vēnit. Prīmus[2] in urbem cōpiās armātās dūxit. Adversāriōs suōs interfēcit aut fugāvit. Deinde exercitum in Graeciam trādūxit hostīsque complūribus proeliīs vīcit. Tandem Mithri-

[1] *command.* [2] *he first led,* that is *he was the first to lead.*



SULLA

dātēs pācem ā Rōmānīs petere coāctus cōpiās suās ex reliquā Asiā dēdūcere atque intrā suōs fīnīs rēgnāre iussus est.

Sed dum Sulla in Graeciā et Asiā superat, C. Marius et L. Cornēlius Cinna cōnsul bellum in Italiā renovāvērunt. Iī in urbem receptī nōbilissimōs ex senātū interfēcērunt; ipsīus Sullae domum dēlēvērunt, fīliōs et uxōrem fugā salūtem petere coēgērunt. Ūniversus reliquus senātus ex mediā caede fugiēns in Graeciam ad Sullam vēnit petiitque ut patriam ē manibus hostium ēriperet. Sulla in Italiam exercitum trādūxit adversāriōsque multīs proeliīs vīcit. Brevī tempore urbem occupāvit et ingentem cīvium caedem fēcit.

LESSON LIII

358. Verb-Endings. — Make a table showing the personal ending and the tense-sign (where there is one) in each regular form of the indicative, subjunctive, and present imperative. This table should begin as follows: —

PRES. IND.

ACT.	PASS.
ō	**r**
s	**ris** *or* **re**
t	**tur**
mus	**mur**
tis	**minī**
nt	**ntur**

PAST IND.

bam	**bar**
bās	**bāris** *or* **-bāre**
bat	**bātur**
bāmus	**bāmur**
bātis	**bāminī**
bant	**bantur**

FUT. IND.

I, II	III, IV	I, II	III, IV
bō	**am**	**bor**	**ar**
bis	**ēs**	**beris** *or* **bere**	**ēris** *or* **ēre**
bit	**et**	**bitur**	**ētur**
bimus	**ēmus**	**bimur**	**ēmur**
bitis	**ētis**	**biminī**	**ēminī**
bunt	**ent**	**buntur**	**entur**

359. Synopsis of Verbs. — The synopsis of a verb is a summary of its conjugation given in some particular person and number. The following is a synopsis of **amō** in the first person singular: —

IND.

	ACT.	PASS.
PRES.	**amō**	**amor**
PAST	**amābam**	**amābar**
FUT.	**amābō**	**amābor**
PERF.	**amāvī**	**amātus sum**
PAST PERF.	**amāveram**	**amātus eram**
FUT. PERF.	**amāverō**	**amātus erō**

SUBJ.

PRES.	**amem**	**amer**
PAST	**amārem**	**amārer**
PERF.	**amāverim**	**amātus sim**
PAST PERF.	**amāvissem**	**amātus essem**

Exercises

360. Tell in what forms of the verb the following endings are found: **-ērunt, -erint, -rent, -istis, -issētis, -re, -minī, -am, -ēs, -ētur, -rētur, -bō, -erō, -it, -bit, -erit.**

361. Give a comparative synopsis of the model verbs of the four regular conjugations in the first person singular: **amō, moneō, regō, audiō; amābam, monēbam,** *etc.*

362. Give synopses of **cōgō** and **probō** in the third person singular by voices: **cōgit, cōgēbat,** *etc.*

363. Give synopses of **accipiō** and **reperiō** in the second person plural by moods: **accipitis, accipimini, accipiēbātis, accipiēbāminī,** *etc.*

364. Give synopses of **creō** and **augeō** in the first person plural by tenses: **creāmus, creāmur, creēmus, creēmur; creābāmus,** *etc.*

LESSON LIV

365. Present Infinitive Passive. — Learn the present infinitive passive of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō,** and **capiō** (sections 489, 490, 491).

How can the passive present infinitive be formed from the active in the first, second, and fourth conjugations? What is its ending in the third conjugation?

366. Vocabulary

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgae, the Belgians,* a people of Gaul.
cottīdiē, adv., *daily.* [diēs].
dolor, dolōris, m., *pain, grief. doleful.*
inter sē, *among themselves, one another.*
mōs, mōris, m., *custom. morals.*
prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost.* [propinquus].
propior, propius, comparative, with dat.,[1] *nearer.*
proximus, -a, -um, with dat., *nearest, next. proximity.*
prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*

adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectum, *visit, afflict.* [ad + faciō].
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *divide.*
incolō, incolere, incoluī, *inhabit, dwell. colony.*
permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtum, *influence;* also *disturb, alarm.* [per + moveō].
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum, *think. reputation.*

[1] See section 89.

Exercises

367. 1. Dīc nōbīs utrum hōrum oppidōrum propius sit. 2. Gallia est dīvīsa[1] in partīs trīs. 3. Aliquis dīcit, "Belgae ūnam partem incolunt." 4. Aliquis dīcit Belgās ūnam partem incolere (*see 368*). 5. Dīxit Belgās ūnam partem incolere. 6. Intereā repperit eōs cum Germānīs prope cottīdiē contendere. 7. Hī omnēs mōribus lēgibusque inter sē dissimilēs sunt. 8. Scrīpsit hōs omnīs mōribus lēgibusque inter sē dissimilīs esse. 9. Rōmānī sē intrā prōvinciam continent. 10. Fac eum certiōrem Rōmānōs sē intrā prōvinciam continēre. 11. Putāsne populum Rōmānum magis auctōritāte vestrā quam suō timōre permovērī? 12. Neque in caede illā bellī cīvīlis erat quisquam quī dolōre nōn adficerētur. 13. Sī quid audīvit, statim ad proximum magistrātum nūntium mittit.

368. Indirect Statements. — Sentence 3 contains a direct quotation, or one that gives the exact words of the person who makes the statement. In sentences 4 and 5 the same statement is quoted indirectly — that is, the original words are changed so that their construction depends upon the verb of saying (*says the Belgians to inhabit*, that is *says that the Belgians inhabit; said the Belgians to inhabit*, that is *said that the Belgians inhabited*). Notice that the Latin indirect statement differs from the English in these particulars: —

1. No conjunction corresponding to English ***that*** is used to introduce it.
2. Its subject is accusative, not nominative.
3. Its verb is infinitive, not indicative.
4. The tense of the infinitive is not affected by the tense of the verb of saying.

---

[1] Here a predicate adjective; *is divided*, not *has been divided*.

Indirect statements depend upon verbs expressing the ideas of saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving. Note the Latin verbs which are followed by indirect statements in the sentences above.

What is the clause depending upon the verb of saying in sentence 1 called? How does it differ from an indirect statement?

369. 1. I thought that the Belgians were awaiting your arrival. 2. They say that you are near. 3. He understands that Gaul is divided into three parts. 4. A certain prisoner reported that they were meanwhile seizing the nearest towns one by one. 5. He learns that their customs are much nearer ours. 6. His wife writes daily that she is afflicted with grief. 7. He shows us that this tribe inhabits a great part of the province. 8. He understood why the Belgians were exchanging[1] hostages. 9. I see that they are especially influenced by your authority.

LESSON LV

370. Perfect and Future Infinitives. — Learn the perfect and future infinitives, active and passive, of **amō, moneō, regō, audiō, capiō** (sections 489, 490, 491); and the perfect and future infinitives of **sum** (section 493).

What is the ending of the perfect infinitive active? How are the perfect infinitive passive and the future infinitive active formed? The participle in these forms agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case. The first part of the future infinitive passive can be got from the perfect participle, but it is not the participle and does not agree with the subject.

---

[1] That is *giving one another*.

371. Vocabulary

angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.* [angustiae].
fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., *neighbors.* [fīnis].
mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader. commerce.*
minus,[1] adv., *less. diminish.*
minimē,[1] adv., *least, very little. minimize.*
opīniō, opīniōnis, f., *opinion*; also *reputation.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, *unbroken, continual. perpetuate.*
prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership.* [prīmus + capiō].
prō, prep. with abl., *in proportion to, considering.*[2]
trāns, prep. with acc., *across.* [trādūcō].

cōnfirmō, cōnfirmāre, cōnfirmāvī, cōnfirmātum, *strengthen, establish. confirmation.*
spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātum, *hope.* [spēs].

Exercises

372. Give all the infinitives of **cōnfirmō, reperiō, pōnō, moveō,** and **ēripiō.**

373. 1. Belgae dīcunt mercātōrēs ad sē minimē saepe ventūrōs esse (*see 374*). 2. Reperiēbam Belgās perpetuum bellum cum fīnitimīs gessisse. 3. Gallī sē prō multitūdine hominum fīnīs angustōs habēre dīcunt. 4. Quīdam scrībit māiōrēs nostrōs summō suppliciō malōs cīvīs adfēcisse. 5. Tanta erat eōrum virtūtis opīniō[3] apud Gallōs ut perpetuum prīncipātum obtinērent. 6. Eae gentēs quae trāns flūmen incolunt inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant. 7. Gallī dixērunt castra quam celerrimē (*see 375*) oppugnātum īrī. 8. Frūmentum cottīdiē inter miserōs cīvīs dīviditur. 9. Eae cīvitātēs quae proximae sunt prōvinciae sē cum populō Rōmānō

[1] **Minus** and **minimē** are from **minor** and **minimus,** comparative and superlative of **parvus.**
[2] What other meanings of this word have been given already? See section 146.
[3] May be translated *their reputation for bravery.*

pācem cōnfīrmātūrās [1] spērāvērunt. 10. Putō eōs nōn minus dolōre quam timōre permōtōs.[1]

374. Use of Infinitive Tenses. — The tense of the infinitive indicates time with reference only to the time of the verb on which the infinitive depends: —

1. The present infinitive represents an action at the time of the verb on which it depends.

2. The perfect infinitive represents an action before the time of the verb on which it depends.

3. The future infinitive represents an action after the time of the verb on which it depends.

AT THE TIME

Dīcit sē scrībere, *he says that he is writing, he says that he writes.*
Dīxit sē scrībere, *he said that he was writing, he said that he wrote.*

BEFORE THE TIME

Dīcit sē scrīpsisse, *he says that he has written, he says that he wrote.*
Dīxit sē scrīpsisse, *he said that he had written, he said that he wrote.*

AFTER THE TIME

Dīcit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he says that he shall write.*
Dīxit sē scrīptūrum esse, *he said that he should write.*

Notice that when the verb on which it depends represents a past action, the English past may stand for the Latin present infinitive or perfect infinitive. Therefore, before you put into Latin *he said that he wrote,* for instance, you must determine whether the speaker was writing at the time he spoke, or had already written.

Find all the indirect statements in the sentences above, and tell the reason for the tense of the infinitive in each.

375. ***Quam* with Superlative.** — In sentence 7 **quam celerrimē** may be translated *as quickly as possible.* **Quam** is often used with the superlative of adjectives and adverbs to indicate the highest possible degree.

[1] **Esse** is often omitted in future active and perfect passive infinitives.

376. 1. Some one said that the customs of the Gauls and Belgians were nearly the same. 2. We hope that each state will strengthen the alliance with its neighbors. 3. If any one has this opinion concerning me, I hope that he will not hesitate to speak. 4. I saw that they had chosen the nearer hill. 5. And he does not see any one across the river except a few traders. 6. I think that they had very narrow boundaries, considering their reputation for bravery. 7. I hear that he is less eager for the leadership than in former years. 8. He said that there would be unbroken peace. 9. You collected as large a number of soldiers as possible.

LESSON LVI

377. Deponent Verbs. — Deponent verbs are passive in form, but active in meaning.[1] They are found in all four conjugations, and are inflected like the passive of other verbs (see section 492), except that: —

1. They have the active participles as well as the passive.
2. The future infinitive is active in form.

378. Vocabulary

aut . . . aut, *either . . . or*.
firmus, -a, -um, *strong*. [**cōnfirmō**].
plēbs, plēbis, f., *common people*. **plebeian**.
profectiō, profectiōnis, f., *departure*.
quod, conj., *because*.
undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.

adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum,[2] *attack*.
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, *think*. **arbitrary**.
cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*.
polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise*.
sequor, sequī, secūtus sum, *follow*. **sequence**.
vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, *roam*. **vagrant**.

[1] The gerundive has its usual passive meaning.
[2] Notice that only three forms are given as the principal parts of a deponent verb, since the perfect participle appears in the perfect indicative.

Exercises

379. Give synopses, together with all participles and infinitives, of **arbitror** in the first person singular, **polliceor** in the second person plural, and **sequor** in the third person plural.

380. 1. Intrā angustōs fīnīs montibus altissimīs undique continēmur. 2. Hīs dē causīs illa gēns minus lātē vagābātur. 3. Arbitror eōs eā dē causā magnō dolōre adfectōs. 4. Is prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximā apud plēbem grātiā erat. 5. Gallī auctōritāte ēius permōtī omnia ad[1] profectiōnem quam celerrimē comparant. 6. Cōnāre[2] hās cīvitātēs conciliāre, quod prope fīrmissimae sunt tōtīus Galliae. 7. Fīnitimīs persuāsērunt ut idem cōnārentur. 8. Pollicēminī[2] vōs pācem perpetuam cōnservātūrōs. 9. Flūmen proximās cīvitātēs ā prōvinciā nostrā dīvidit. 10. Belgae mercātōrēs fīnibus suīs prohibent. 11. Sequere[2] cum omnibus tuīs cōpiīs, adorīre hostīs vagantīs. 12. Propiōrēs cīvitātēs aut frūmentum aut mīlitēs pollicitae sunt.

381. 1. Follow the customs of your ancestors, try to strengthen your friendship with the common people. 2. I think that they will roam more widely. 3. The barbarians who inhabit these towns suddenly attacked us. 4. Promise that you will follow me across the river. 5. We thought that everything had been prepared for departure. 6. Considering its size, the garrison is very strong. 7. They came together from all sides daily, because they wished to hear the news. 8. Having promised their aid, they sent either money or soldiers. 9. I hope that I shall have the highest reputation for justice.[3] 10. They love one another very little.

---

[1] *for.* [2] Imperative. [3] See section 373, sentence 5.

LESSON LVII

382. Semi-Deponent Verbs. — The four verbs **audeō, gaudeō, soleō,** and **fīdō** have active forms in the present, past, and future, but are deponent in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect.

383. Vocabulary

mūnus, mūneris, n., *task, duty.*[1] **propterea quod,** *for the reason that, because.* [propter + is].
immunity.

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, *dare.* [audāx].
fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, with dat.,[2] *trust.* [fidēs].
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, with abl., *enjoy.* *fruition.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, with abl., *perform.* *function.*
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, *be glad.*
potior, potīrī, potītus sum, with abl., *get possession of, get.* [potestās].
soleō, solēre, solitus sum, *be accustomed.*
ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, with abl., *use.*
vescor, vescī, with abl., *eat.*

Exercises

384. 1. Hostēs facilius sequēbantur, quod equīs (*see 385*) ūtī solēbant. 2. Cupiditāte rēgnī[3] adductus rēgem aut expellere aut interficere cōnātus est. 3. Plūrimīs rēbus fruimur atque ūtimur. 4. Nostra opiniō virtūtis ita cōnfīrmāta erat ut hostēs nōs adorīrī nōn audērent. 5. Tibi fidō propterea quod mūnere illō prō rē pūblicā susceptō fūnctus es. 6. Gaudēmus quod[4] pāx perpetua cum fīnitimīs nostrīs est. 7. Nostrī quam lātissimē vagantēs magnā praedā potītī sunt. 8. Arbitrātur esse facile prīncipātū tōtius Galliae potīrī. 9. Frūmentō vescēbāmur quod mercātōrēs comparāverant.

---

[1] What other meaning of this word has been given already?
[2] See section 224.
[3] See page 54, foot-note 4.
[4] May here be translated *that.*

385. Ablative with Certain Deponents. — The ablative **equīs** in sentence 1 is governed by **ūtī** (*to use horses*). Notice that in the English translation the verb *use* is transitive, and *horses* is its direct object. The sentences above contain the other deponent verbs which govern the ablative. What are they ?

What other Latin verbs do you know that are intransitive, but translated as transitive ? What case do they govern ?

386. 1. We are glad that the time of departure has come. 2. We hope that he will get possession of entire Gaul. 3. He is away so often that we enjoy him less. 4. I was accustomed to trust him least of all my friends. 5. The common people perform the duty of slaves. 6. The old man[1] is very strong, considering his years. 7. There was nothing that he did not dare to eat. 8. He will use the ships which he has collected. 9. We do not trust his plan, for the reason that he is a man of narrow mind. 10. They promised that they would remain across the river.

THE PLOT OF ORGETORIX

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partīs trīs ; quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam iī quī ab sē Celtae, ab nōbīs[2] Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs sunt mōribus lēgibusque inter sē dissimilēs. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen dīvidit, ā Belgīs Mātrona et Sēquana. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, proptereā quod ā prōvinciā longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe veniunt; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum perpetuum bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte superant, quod ferē cottīdiē cum Germānīs con-

[1] **senex.**

[2] That is, the Romans. This reading-lesson and those which follow are adapted from Caesar, and narrate events from the Roman standpoint.

tendunt, dum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. Is rēgnī cupiditāte inductus nōbilis sibi conciliāvit, et cīvitātī persuāsit ut fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs excēderent. Dīxit esse facile tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī, dēmōnstrāvitque Helvētiōs virtūte omnibus praestāre. Facilius iīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētiōrum ā Germānīs dīvidit; aliā ex parte monte Iūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā ex parte Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus accidit ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile cum fīnitimīs bellum gererent. Itaque magnō dolōre adficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine hominum et prō opiniōne virtūtis angustōs sē fīnīs habēre arbitrābantur.

Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt omnīs rēs ad profectiōnem comparāre, quam plūrimum frūmentum cōgere, ut in itinere cōpiam habērent, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfirmāre. Tertium annum profectiōnī lēge cōnstituērunt. Orgetorīx dux dēligitur. Is lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscipit. Persuādet Casticō Sēquanō, cūius pater rēgnum multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret,[1] quod pater anteā habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīviciācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximā apud plēbem erat grātiā, ut idem cōnārētur persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Inter sē fidem et iūs iūrandum dant, et tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē potītūrōs esse spērant.

[1] When the principal verb is a historical present, its meaning is usually regarded rather than its form, and then the past or past perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause.

LESSON LVIII

387. The Irregular Verbs *possum* and *prōsum*. — Learn the conjugation of **possum**, *be able* (section 494). Notice that the spelling is **pos** before the forms of **sum** which begin with **s** and in the present infinitive and imperfect subjunctive, **pot** elsewhere; and that the perfect does not have **f**.

Prōsum, *benefit*, has **prōd** before the forms of **sum** which begin with **e** (section 495).

388. Vocabulary

aedificium, -ī, n., *building*. [aedificō].
ante, prep. with acc., *before*. [anteā].
circiter, adv., *about*. *circle*.
ignis, ignis,[1] m., *fire*. *ignite*.
nōn nūllī, *some, several*.
ūnā, adv., *together*, *in company*. [ūnus].
vīcus, -ī, m., *village*. *vicinity*.

coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum, *join with*, *join*, *unite*. [adiungō].
cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptum, *consume*, *waste*. [sūmō].
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die*. [mors].
possum, posse, potuī, *be able*, *can*. [potestās].
proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum, *set out*, *start*. [profectiō].
prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, with dat., *benefit*. [prō + sum].
revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum,[2] *turn back*, *return*. *versatile*.

Exercises

389. 1. Dīcit aedificium in quō Hannibal sit multōs exitūs habēre. 2. Dīxit aedificium in quō Hannibal esset multōs exitūs habēre. 3. Dux ante eōrum profectiōnem mortuus est. 4. Fīnitimīs persuāsērunt ut aut ūnā sēcum

[1] The ablative singular is igne or ignī.

[2] The first revertī is present infinitive, the second is perfect indicative. Revertor is deponent in the present, past, and future, but has active forms in the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect. It is, then, just the opposite of the semi-deponent verbs given in section 382.

proficīscerentur aut frūmentum mitterent. 5. Nōn nūllī quī profectī sunt numquam revertentur. 6. Audīmus nōn nūllōs quī profectī sint numquam reversūrōs. 7. Facile est imperiō potīrī, quod virtūte omnibus praestāmus. 8. Arbitrantur facile esse imperiō potīrī, quod virtūte omnibus praestent. 9. Prōdest plēbī hunc ducem sequī, cui omnēs fīdere possunt. 10. Ea quae pollicitus erās fēcistī. 11. Intellēxī tē ea quae pollicitus essēs fēcisse. 12. Germānōs sēcum coniungere cōnantur. 13. Postquam circiter quadringentī vīcī ignī cōnsūmptī sunt, hostīs undique adortī sunt. 14. Cōnsilium quō imperātor ūsus esset bonum esse arbitrābāmur.

390. Indirect Subordinate Clauses. — In sentence 1 the clause **in quō Hannibal sit** is a part of the quotation. Notice that it is subordinate to the indirect statement **aedificium multōs exitūs habēre**, and that its verb is in the subjunctive.

You must carefully distinguish these three constructions: —

1. Indirect statement (infinitive).
2. Indirect question (subjunctive).
3. Indirect subordinate clause (subjunctive).

Compare sentences 1 and 2, and notice that the tense of the subjunctive is determined by the verb of saying, in accordance with the rule for the harmony of tenses.

Find all the other indirect subordinate clauses in the sentences above.

391. 1. I did not dare to trust you. 2. Perform the task which you have been accustomed to neglect. 3. He says that he is performing the task which he has neglected. 4. I am glad that[1] this can benefit you. 5. He said that he was glad that this could benefit you. 6. My friend returned and roamed through the fields in company with me. 7. I

[1] See section 384, sentence 6.

think that we enjoy the winter more, for the reason that we are stronger. 8. The grain which they cannot eat they will consume with fire. 9. After they had destroyed the buildings of several villages, they started. 10. They thought that they could defend the allies who had been united with them.[1] 11. He died about ten days[2] before our departure.

LESSON LIX

392. Vocabulary

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*, a famous Roman general.
expeditus, -a, -um, *unobstructed*. [impediō].
omnīnō, adv., *in all, at all*. [omnis].
pōns, pontis, m., *bridge*. *pontoon*.
praeter, prep. with acc., *except, besides*.
vadum, -ī, n., *ford*. *wade*.

concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *yield, grant*. [excēdō].
pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātum, *pacify, subdue*. [pāx].

Exercises

393. 1. Caesar Galliā pācātā (*see 394*) in Italiam revertit. 2. Imperātōre absente nihil facere audēmus. 3. Tē duce tōtā Galliā potīrī poterimus. 4. Vīcīs suīs numerō[3] circiter quadringentīs incēnsīs domō proficīscuntur. 5. Vadīs repertīs ponte nōn iam ūtuntur. 6. Gallī iter per prōvinciam facient, propterea quod aliud iter habent nūllum. 7. Nōn nūllīs aedificiīs ignī cōnsūmptīs in prōvinciam itinere expedītissimō contendunt. 8. Cōpiīs coniūnctīs iter ūnā cum sociīs fēcimus. 9. Erat omnīnō in Galliā nūlla legiō praeter hanc. 10. Hāc rē concessā barbarī sē ab iniūriā prohibēbunt. 11. Dīcit sē frūmentum quō mīlitēs vescantur dare.

---

[1] See page 119, foot-note 1.
[2] Use the ablative of measure of difference. [3] Ablative of respect.

394. Ablative Absolute. — In sentence 1 the words **Galliā pācātā** are in the construction called ablative absolute, which corresponds to the nominative absolute in English. The literal translation is *Gaul subdued* or *Gaul having been subdued;* but we may translate more freely *having subdued Gaul, after subduing Gaul, after Gaul had been subdued, when Gaul had been subdued,* or *since Gaul had been subdued.* Notice that *Caesar having subdued Gaul* cannot be put into Latin without a change in the construction, because Latin has no perfect active participle. In sentence 2 **imperātōre absente** is literally *the general absent* or *the general being absent;* but we may say *while the general is absent, when the general is absent, since the general is absent, though the general is absent, if the general is absent,* or *in the general's absence.* In sentence 3 **tē duce** may be translated *since you are our leader, if you are our leader,* or *under your leadership.* The literal translation is *you leader,* that is *you being leader,* but there is no present participle of **sum** to correspond to *being.*

These three sentences show the general features of the ablative absolute: —

1. It consists of a noun or pronoun with a participle, noun, or adjective in agreement.

2. The noun or pronoun denotes a person or thing not mentioned elsewhere in the clause.

3. The word in agreement is in the nature of a predicate.

4. The translation must be varied to suit the meaning of the sentence. When the Latin has a perfect passive participle, the best translation is often an active participle, with the noun or pronoun as its object. Most ablatives absolute may be translated by a subordinate clause of time, cause, opposition, or condition.

Find all other ablatives absolute in the sentences above.

395. 1. Our leader dead,[1] our armies routed, we yielded to the victor at last. 2. Having subdued us, Caesar withdrew into Italy. 3. He does not trust himself in your absence. 4. If the bridge has been destroyed,[2] hasten to

[1] That is *having died.* [2] Use the ablative absolute.

the ford before night. 5. When the roads were unobstructed,[1] they were accustomed to march day and night. 6. Since you are wretched,[1] I can enjoy these things very little. 7. It will benefit no one at all except you. 8. I performed this duty with your approval.[2] 9. Having learned this, I was glad.

LESSON LX

396. The Irregular Verb *ferō*. — Learn the indicative, subjunctive, present imperative, infinitive, and participles, active and passive, of **ferō**, *bear* (section 497).

Notice that this verb has, for the most part, the regular forms of the third conjugation, but is irregular in certain forms of the present indicative and imperative and in the present infinitive and past subjunctive: —

1. The present stem does not have a final vowel before **r**, **s**, and **t**.

2. The singular of the present imperative active is **fer**, not **fere** (see section 348).

3. The present infinitive passive is **ferrī**, not **ferī**.

397. Vocabulary

nūper, adv., *recently*. **praetereā**, adv., *besides*. [**praeter** + **is**].

exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātum, *think. estimate.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear, carry. transfer.*

efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, *carry away*. [**ex** + **ferō**].

licet, licēre, licuit or **licitum est**,[3] *it is permitted. license.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, allow. patience.*

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *extend*. [**per** + **teneō**].

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise;* also *remove. extol.*

---

[1] Use the ablative absolute. [2] Say *you approving*.

[3] **Licet** is an impersonal verb. An impersonal verb is one that is used without a subject or with an infinitive or a clause as its subject, and has therefore only the forms of the third person singular and the infinitives. In English *it* is used with an impersonal verb.

Exercises

398. 1. Helvētiī frūmentum omne praeter id quod sēcum ēlātūrī sunt ignī cōnsūmunt. 2. Spē fugae sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula erimus. 3. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. 4. Helvētiī exīstimābant eam cīvītātem quae nūper pācāta esset nōn bonō animō[1] esse. 5. Iīs persuādēbimus ut per suōs fīnīs nōs iter facere patiantur. 6. Tibi ūnī hoc concēdam, nēminī praetereā. 7. Sunt omnīnō circiter quīngentī hominēs quī arma ferre possint. 8. Id quod mihi prōdest sequor, fugiōque id quod mihi nocet. 9. Ante hiemem ūnā mēcum in Galliam proficīscētur. 10. Nōbīs licēbat iter in Galliam facere. 11. Petimus ut nōbīs liceat expeditiōre itinere revertī.

399. 1. They order all to carry grain besides. 2. You may[2] burn all the buildings of your villages. 3. But we shall not allow you to march through our territory. 4. We think that they can be led across by a ford. 5. They had recently made a bridge to join[3] the two towns. 6. This wood extends from the river even to the town. 7. Caesar's arrival removed all fear. 8. My brother having died, I hastened home. 9. Some think that he was carried away by the desire for power.

CAESAR'S ARRIVAL IN GAUL

Orgetorīx autem ante profectiōnem Helvētiōrum mortuus est. Post ēius mortem tamen id quod cōnstituerant facere cōnantur domōsque suās relinquere parant. Ubi iam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō circiter duodecim, vīcōs circiter quadringentōs, reliqua aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter id quod sēcum

[1] Descriptive ablative; *of good mind*, that is *well-disposed*.
[2] Say *it is permitted to you to*. [3] Do not use the infinitive.

CAESAR

ēlātūrī erant, igni cōnsūmunt, ut fugae spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula essent; satis frūmentī sibi[1] quemque domō efferre iubent. Persuādent fīnitimīs ut oppidīs suīs vīcīsque incēnsīs[2] ūnā cum iīs proficīscantur; Bōiōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant, sibi societāte adiungunt.

Erant omnīnō itinera duo quibus domō excēdere possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iūram et flūmen Rhodanum (mōns altissimus tam propinquus erat ut facile paucī prohibēre[3] possent); alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fīnīs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, est Rhodanus, cōpiaeque nōn nūllīs locīs vadō trādūcī possunt. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est, proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus, Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē aut persuāsūrōs, quod nōn bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur,[4] exīstimābant aut vī coāctūrōs ut per suōs fīnīs eōs iter facere paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem cōnstituunt, quā[5] diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant.

Caesarī ubi id nūntiātum est, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, properat ab urbe proficīscī et quam maximīs itineribus in Galliam contendit et Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum mīlitum numerum imperat[6] (erat omnīnō in Galliā legiō ūna), pontem quī erat ad Genavam iubet dēlērī. Ubi dē ēius adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, quī dīcerent sē in animō habēre sine ūllā iniūriā iter per prōvinciam

---

[1] *for himself.*

[2] The perfect participle is often to be translated by the form of the verb that can be connected by *and* with the principal verb of the clause. Here the best translation is *to burn and set out.*

[3] That is *prevent them from passing.* [4] See page 73, foot-note 1.

[5] **Diēs** is commonly feminine when it denotes a fixed day.

[6] May be translated *levied upon the province.*

facere, proptereā quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; sē petere ut id sibi facere licēret. Caesar hoc concēdendum esse nōn putābat; neque eōs itinere per prōvinciam datō sē prohibitūrōs ab iniūriā exīstimābat. Tamen, nē proelium committere cōgerētur ante adventum mīlitum quōs imperāverat, lēgātīs respondit sē haec cōgitātūrum. Certam diem cōnstituit, quā reverterentur.

LESSON LXI

400. Vocabulary

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight. conspicuous.*
cum, conj., *since, as*; also *although, though.*
paene, adv., *almost. peninsula.*
praesertim, adv., *especially.*
servitūs, servitūtis, f., *slavery.* [servus].

dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum, *distribute, arrange.* [pōnō].
perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum, *finish, complete.* [per + faciō].
repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repulse.* [pellō].

Exercises

401. 1. Servitūtem diūtius nōn feram, praesertim cum nōs līberārī posse videam. 2. Nēminem timeō praeter deum sōlum. 3. Cum apud eōs plūrimum posset,[1] tamen nihil effēcit. 4. Caesar, cum hostēs iter impediant, tamen in Galliam perveniet. 5. Cum[2] nōbīs persuādēre nōn possent, cōnsiliō dēstitērunt. 6. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, quae Helvētiōs tēlīs repellant. 7. Cum in fidē et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī sīmus, tamen puerōs nostrōs paene in cōnspectū exercitūs tuī in servitūtem dūcī pateris. 8. Cum vada reperīre nōn possint, pontem faciunt. 9. Quae cum ita sint, vītam tibi concēdam, praetereā nihil. 10. Cum Gallia pācāta sit, Caesar in Italiam revertitur.

---

[1] *was most powerful* or *was very powerful.*
[2] How can you tell that this is not the preposition?

402. Causal and Adversative *cum*-Clauses. — Notice that the clauses introduced by **cum** in the sentences above express the cause of the action represented by the principal verb or an idea opposed to the action, and that the verbs of these clauses are in the subjunctive.

403. 1. If it is permitted, we shall carry away these things. 2. Although the works had been completed, they did not extend to the river. 3. As the guards have been carefully [1] arranged, the enemy can easily be driven back. 4. Since they were so near, we could not avoid the missiles. 5. This, although it happened almost in sight of the city, they did not see. 6. I think that they will follow, especially since the roads are unobstructed. 7. Slavery is not easily borne. 8. Recently he has not been able to raise himself at all.

LESSON LXII

404. The Irregular Verb *eō*. — Learn the indicative, subjunctive, present imperative, infinitive, and participles of **eō**, *go* (section 498).

Notice that **ii** becomes **ī** before **s** in the perfect infinitive, the past perfect subjunctive, and the second person of the perfect indicative.

405. Vocabulary

altitūdō, altitūdinis, f., *height, depth.* [altus].
beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness.* [bene + faciō].
cum, conj., *when.*[2]
hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters.* [hiems].
mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f., *fortification, defenses.* [mūniō].
nātiō, nātiōnis, f., *people, nation.*

eō, īre, iī, itum, *go.* [exitus].
trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum, *go across, cross.* [trāns + eō].
vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum, *ravage. devastation.*

[1] Use the ablative of manner. [2] What other meanings has this word ?

Exercises

406. 1. Caesar cum omnīs eōrum agrōs vāstāvisset (*see 407*), legiōnēs in hīberna dēdūxit. 2. Caesar, cum Gallia pācāta esset, in Italiam revertit. 3. Praetereā aliae nātiōnēs, cum imperium populī Rōmānī augērētur, novīs rēbus[1] studēbant. 4. Ab oppidō ad montem mīlia passuum decem mūrum fossamque dūxit.[2] 5. Cum hās mūnītiōnēs perfēcisset, sē posse eōs repellere exīstimābat. 6. Helvētii eā spē sublātā vadīs, ubi minima altitūdō flūminis erat, trānsīre cōnātī sunt. 7. Sēquanīs persuādēre poterit, praesertim cum grātiā apud eōs plūrimum possit. 8. Cum socii nostrī in perīculō essent, auxilium tulimus. 9. Sēquanī cum Dumnorīgis beneficiō conciliātī essent, Helvētiōs per suōs fīnīs īre passī sunt. 10. Cum ego in servitūtem dūcerer, tuae salūtī cōnsuluistī.

407. ***Cum*-Clauses of Situation.** — In sentence 1 the clause introduced by **cum** describes the situation at the time of the action represented by the main verb (*when Caesar had ravaged, Caesar having ravaged*). Often the description of the situation includes the idea of cause or opposition: for instance, **cum Gallia pācāta esset** in sentence 2 may mean both *when Gaul had been subdued* and *since Gaul had been subdued.* In this way the **cum**-clause came to express the special idea of cause or opposition (see section 402). Any tense of the subjunctive is used in causal and adversative **cum**-clauses, but in **cum**-clauses of situation only the past or past perfect.

Notice that **cum Gallia pācāta esset** in sentence 2 expresses the same idea as **Galliā pācātā** in section 393, sentence 1; and that **Sēquanī conciliātī** would express the same idea as **Sēquanī cum conciliātī essent** in sentence 9. **Cum** with the subjunctive is often equivalent to a participle.

---

[1] *new things*, that is, *a revolution.*

[2] *made*, but **dūxit** expresses the idea of carrying forward, or extending.

408. 1. I met him in the city recently. 2. When he had died, we went into the province. 3. When I inquired, I learned that his kindnesses extended to the most wretched. 4. While it is permitted, enjoy the sight. 5. When the legions had been distributed, they fortified winter quarters. 6. Although the enemy had been repulsed, they began again to cross the river. 7. When they saw the great height of the defenses, they almost despaired. 8. When you had ravaged the fields of these peoples, you carried away your plunder with you.

LESSON LXIII

409. The Irregular Verbs *volō, nōlō, mālō.* — Learn the conjugation of **volō**, *wish;* **nōlō**, *be unwilling;* **mālō**, *prefer* (section 496).

Notice that these verbs have irregular forms in the present of all moods and in the past subjunctive.

What other verbs have **ī** in the present subjunctive?

410. Vocabulary

circum, prep. with acc., *about.*
quō, conj., *in order that, so that, that.* [circumveniō].
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, *lead out, bring out.* [ē + dūcō].
hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum, *spend the winter, winter.* [hiems].
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātum, with dat.,[1] *bring upon, inflict upon;* **bellum īnferre**, *make war upon.* [in + ferō].
volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish.* [voluntās].
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, *be unwilling, not wish.*
mālō, mālle, māluī, *wish rather, prefer.* [magis + volō].

Exercises

411. 1. Caesar praesidia dispōnit, quō facilius Helvētiīs resistat. 2. Sē nōlle iter cuiquam per prōvinciam dare

[1] See section 241.

dīcit. 3. Et sī vim facere cōnentur, sē prohibitūrum dēmōnstrat. 4. Caesar cum Helvētiōs trānsīre audīret, eōs prohibēre voluit. 5. Legiōnēs quās accēperat circum illam urbem hiemābant. 6. Cum legiōnēs ex hībernīs ēdūxisset, proximō itinere in Galliam īre contendit. 7. Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sē agrīs vāstātīs Helvētiōs repellere nōn posse. 8. Quae cum ita sint, morī quam servitūtem ferre mālō. 9. Beneficia ā malīs hominibus accipere nōlumus. 10. Hae nātiōnēs cum Caesarī bellum īnferrent, complūribus proeliīs pulsae sunt.

412. ***Quō*-Clauses of Purpose.** — Notice that the clause **quō . . . resistat** in sentence 1 expresses purpose, and that it contains the comparative **facilius**. A clause of purpose in which there is a comparative is usually introduced by **quō**, instead of **ut**.

413. 1. When the defenses had been completed,[1] the legions were led out and stationed in sight of the enemy. 2. Although the height of the fortification is not great, the enemy can easily be driven back. 3. He is unwilling to inflict injury upon us, especially as we cannot resist. 4. I wish rather to be than to seem[2] good. 5. If you wish, I will spend the winter at home, that I may better defend you. 6. He said that, if we wished, he would send a slave to lead[3] us about the town. 7. Almost all are willing to go.

THE BEGINNING OF THE HELVETIAN WAR

Intereā eā legiōne quam sēcum habēbat mīlitibusque quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant ā Lemannō ad montem Iūram mīlia passuum ūndēvīgintī mūrum pedum sēdecim[4] fossamque dūcit.

---

[1] Express this in two ways, by an ablative absolute and with **cum**.
[2] See page 73, foot-note 1.
[3] Use a relative clause of purpose. [4] That is, *in height*.

Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella mūnit, quō facilius, sī contrā suam voluntātem trānsīre cōnārentur,[1] prohibēre posset. Ubi ea diēs quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, dīcit sē nōlle iter cuiquam per prōvinciam dare; et sī vim facere[2] cōnentur, sē prohibitūrum dēmōnstrat. Helvētiī eā spē sublātā, aliī nāvibus coniūnctīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, ubi minima altitūdō flūminis erat, saepe noctū trānsīre cōnātī sunt. Mūnītiōne et mīlitum tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnsiliō dēstitērunt.

Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā contrā Sēquanōrum voluntātem propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum ipsī persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt. Dumnorīx enim grātiā apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat; et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō conciliāre volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat ut per fīnīs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque ut inter sēsē dent efficit. Sēquanī pollicentur sē itinere Helvētiōs nōn prohibitūrōs; Helvētiī, sē sine ūllā iniūriā trānsitūrōs.

Caesarī nūntiātur Helvētiōs in animō habēre per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in eam partem Galliae facere quae nōn longē ā prōvinciā absit. Id sī facerent, intellegēbat prōvinciam magnō cum perīculō hostīs populī Rōmānī fīnitimōs habitūram. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī quam fēcerat T.[3] Labiēnum lēgātum praeficit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs novās comparat, et trīs quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant ex hībernīs ēdūcit, et proximō itinere in Galliam cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre

[1] Subjunctive in an indirect subordinate clause. The clause expresses the thought of the subject of the principal clause.

[2] That is, *force the passage*.

[3] The abbreviation for **Titus**.

contendit. Quaedam gentēs quae Alpīs incolunt locīs superiōribus occupātīs itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Hīs complūribus proeliīs pulsīs ab oppidō Italiae extrēmō in prōvinciam diē septimō pervenit; inde in fīnīs eōrum exercitum dūcit quī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

Helvētiī iam per angustiās et fīnīs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant et in Haeduōrum fīnīs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs vāstābant. Haeduī cum sē suaque ab iīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt, quī auxilium peterent. Hī dicunt sē in fidē atque amīcitiā populī Rōmānī esse, ut paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī agrī vāstārī, puerī in servitūtem dūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbeant. Eōdem tempore sociī eōrum Caesarem certiōrem faciunt sēsē vāstātīs agrīs nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar Helvētiīs bellum īnferre cōnstituit.

LESSON LXIV

414. Vocabulary

explōrātor, explōrātōris, m., *scout.* **explōrō,** *explore.*

immortālis, immortāle, *immortal.* [**mors**].

princeps, prīncipis, m., *leading man, head.* [**prīncipātus**].

secundus, -a, -um, *favorable*[1]; **secundae rēs,** *prosperity.*

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum, *hide, conceal.* [**ab** + **dō**].

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *follow up*; also *overtake.* [**sequor**].

mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *intrust. mandate.*

Exercises

415. 1. Cum magna pars eōrum interfecta esset, reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt.[2] 2. Monēbō ut sē abdant, nē capi-

[1] This is the same word that has been learned as an ordinal numeral meaning *second.*

[2] That is, *took to flight.*

antur. 3. Explōrātōrēs praemissī sunt, quī vidērent quam in partem hostēs iter facerent. 4. Pontem facimus, quō facilius eōs cōnsequāmur. 5. Cum prīnceps lēgātiōnis sim, tamen ea quae vultis pollicērī nōn audeō. 6. Ita secundīs rēbus ēlātus erās ut ab dīs[1] immortālibus nōn opem peterēs. 7. Cum frūmentum omne incēnsum sit, domī nihil est quō sē sustinēre possint. 8. Putābāsne legiōnēs hiemātūrās in fīnibus eārum nātiōnum quae superātae essent? 9. Nōbīs bellum īnferre nostrōsque agrōs vāstāre nōlent. 10. Erant circum hīberna ēius multī collēs. 11. Quis est tam audāx quī altitūdine mūnītiōnum nōn permoveātur? 12. Accidit ut fossam trānsīre cōnārentur.

416. Review of Subjunctive Constructions. — Make a list of all the uses of the subjunctive that have been named up to this point, and find an example of each in section 415.

417. 1. Although he had brought out few ships, yet he did not hesitate to join battle. 2. They persuaded us to intrust this matter to the head of the embassy. 3. He said that he preferred to speak about the kindnesses which he had received. 4. Who is there who thinks that the immortal gods[2] disregard the affairs of men? 5. The gods granted us prosperity, that they might destroy us. 6. When he saw this, Caesar sent the cavalry to sustain the enemy's attack. 7. You can learn from the scouts whether the enemy have hidden themselves. 8. We shall go by the same route, that we may overtake them more quickly.

---

[1] See section 463.

[2] The words **dī immortālēs** are regularly written in this order.

LESSON LXV

418. The Irregular Verb *fīō*. — Learn the conjugation of **fīō**, *be done, be made* (section 499).

Fīō is used as the passive of **faciō**; but the perfect, past perfect, and future perfect forms, the future infinitive, and the gerundive are the regular forms of **faciō**.

Notice that the **ī** is long, except in **fit** and before **er**.

419. Vocabulary

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.
gravis, grave, *heavy*; also *important*. *gravity*.
agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *drive*; also *treat*. [**redigō**].
fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be done, be made*; also *result, happen*. *fiat*.
praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātum, *declare*; also *boast*. *predicate*.
vigilia, -ae, f., *watch*, a fourth part of the night. *vigilant*.

Exercises

420. 1. Mercātōrī est pecūnia (*see 421*). 2. Sex nōbīs fīliī sunt. 3. Caesar per explōrātōrēs certior fit Helvētiōs citrā flūmen esse. 4. Hīs rēbus[1] factum est ut sēsē fugae mandārent atque in[2] silvās abderent. 5. Nōbīs est in animō cum Caesare dē hīs rēbus agere. 6. Nōnne ab dīs immortālibus vōs ēreptōs praedicābātis? 7. Nam dē vestrā virtūte praedicāre nōlēbātis. 8. Monent nōs nē prīncipēs cīvitātis gravī suppliciō adficiāmus. 9. Legiōnem quae circum hoc oppidum hiemat adoriēmur. 10. Oppidō satis erit praesidī. 11. Secundā vigiliā equitēs ex castrīs ēdūxit, quō celerius hostīs cōnsequerētur. 12. Quā ex rē fiēbat ut elephantī in mediam aciem agerentur.

421. Dative of Possession. — Sentence 1 means the same as **mercātor pecūniam habet**, and may be translated *the trader has money*.

[1] Ablative of cause.
[2] English says *in*, but the accusative is used in Latin because the idea of motion is implied.

What is the literal translation? Notice that in this construction the dative is used to denote the possessor, the verb is **sum**, and the thing possessed is the subject.

Find the other datives of possession in the sentences above.

422. 1. He is unwilling to inform me about these important matters. 2. The general will have no friendship with you, if you stay in Gaul. 3. If Caesar has already determined to make war upon us, we ought not to treat with him. 4. I have it[1] in mind to attack them suddenly in the third watch. 5. It resulted that we remained on this side of the Alps. 6. I prefer to see what is being done. 7. You are accustomed to boast about your father. 8. In former times justice had honor.

LESSON LXVI

423. Active Periphrastic Conjugation. — You have learned that the future active participle is used with **sum** to represent an action as about to occur or intended. The inflection of **sum** in combination with the future active participle is called the active periphrastic conjugation: for instance, **monitūrus est**, *he is about to advise, is going to advise, is intending to advise*, is the third person singular, present indicative of the active periphrastic conjugation of **moneō**.

424. Vocabulary

inīquus, -a, -um, *unfair, unfavorable.* [aequus].
nōndum, adv., *not yet.* [nōn].
pāgus, -ī, m., *district, division.*
recēns, recentis, *recent.*
repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*
vix, adv., *hardly.*

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, *take a position*; also *halt.* [dēsistō].
īnfluō, īnfluere, īnflūxī, īnflūxum, *flow into, empty into.* [flūmen].
prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum, *advance.* ***progress.***

[1] Omit.

Exercises

425. 1. Quaerō quid fīat. 2. Nōndum ab explōrātōribus certior factus erat hostis citrā flūmen esse. 3. Dīcit sē tertiā vigiliā itūrum esse.[1] 4. Īdem pāgus cōnsulem populī Rōmānī repentinō impetū oppressum interfēcerat. 5. Hās iniūriās recentiōrēs vix ferre possum. 6. Nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem nōn prōgredī vīdērunt. 7. Nōn ea neglēctūrī sumus quae nōbīs mandāta sunt. 8. Erat mihi tēcum conloquium, ut cognōscerem quid factūrus essēs. 9. Cōnsul cum eōs cōnsecūtus esset, cōnsistere cōnstituit. 10. Flūmen ibi trānsitūrī sunt ubi in mare īnfluit.

426. 1. I had not yet learned where the marsh emptied into the river. 2. We shall advance and take a position near the wood in which[2] the enemy have concealed themselves. 3. Our sudden arrival is going to alarm them. 4. The leading men of these districts have been intending to treat with you. 5. The terms were so unfair that we could hardly approve them 6. I was about to ask why the punishment was so heavy. 7. You were about to speak concerning the recent disaster. 8. Who does not understand that this state is going to be immortal? 9. I am not going to boast about my prosperity.

---

[1] Notice that the present infinitive of the active periphrastic conjugation is used as the future infinitive of the regular conjugation: so **itūrum esse** may be translated either *is intending to go* or *will go*.

[2] See section 420, sentence 4.

GALLIC TRUMPETS AND SHIELDS

LESSON LXVII

427. Passive Periphrastic Conjugation. — You have learned that the gerundive is used with **sum** to represent an action as necessary or proper. The inflection of **sum** in combination with the gerundive is called the passive periphrastic conjugation: for instance, **monendus est**, *he is to be advised, must be advised, ought to be advised,* is the third person singular, present indicative of the passive periphrastic conjugation of **moneō**.

428. Vocabulary

agmen, agminis, n., *column* (of a marching army). [agō].

iugum, -ī, n., *ridge.*

praemium, -ī, n., *reward.* ***premium.***

ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum, *climb, ascend.*

īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum, *draw up.* ***structure.***

mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, *deserve.* ***merit.***

statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum, *decide, determine.* [cōnstituō].

Exercises

429. 1. Ante noctem statuendum est quid faciendum sit. 2. Oppidum mihi (*see 430*) mūniendum est. 3. Caesar explōrātōribus certior faciendus est hostīs citrā flūmen esse. 4. Tertiā vigiliā eum pāgum adortī erātis. 5. Impetus hostium tam repentīnus erat ut agmen perturbāret. 6. Iugum ad quod cōnstitimus nōbīs est ascendendum. 7. Aciēs in summō iugō montis īnstruenda erat. 8. Sibi agendum esse tēcum nōn exīstimābant. 9. Spērāmus nōbīs fore[1] perpetuam vōbīscum societātem. 10. Gravissimō suppliciō adficiendī estis. 11. Tibi dē tuā virtūte praedicandum nōn est. 12. Istud praemium vix merēs.

[1] **Fore** is often used as the future infinitive of **sum**. What is the regular form?

430. Dative of Agent. — In sentence 2 **mihi** denotes the agent. The sentence may be translated *the town is to be fortified by me, the town must be fortified by me, the town ought to be fortified by me;* or changed to the active form, *I must fortify the town, I ought to fortify the town, I have to fortify the town.* With the passive periphrastic conjugation the dative is regularly used to denote the agent, instead of **ab** and the ablative.

Find the other datives of agent in the sentences above, and notice that the sentences in which this construction occurs are often to be changed to the active form in translation. What does the agent become when this change is made? What does the subject become?

431. 1. The recent injuries are so great that they ought not to be borne. 2. We must determine[1] what we are going to do. 3. He had not yet decided that he ought to advance. 4. Since the column was overwhelmed by the enemy's cavalry, it halted. 5. He had to draw up the forces in an unfavorable place. 6. The highest ridge is to be climbed by this legion. 7. We must learn the name of the river which empties into the sea here. 8. You ought to await the reward which you have deserved.

BATTLE AND PARLEY

Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnīs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit. Id Helvētiī nāvibus coniūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est trīs iam partīs cōpiārum Helvētiōs trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen reliquam esse, tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impeditōs[2] subitō adortus

[1] Say *it is to be determined by us.*
[2] *impeded*, that is, *at a disadvantage.*

magnam partem eōrum occīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandāvērunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētiōrum in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hic pāgus patrum nostrōrum memoriā[1] cōnsulem populī Rōmānī interfēcerat et ēius exercitum pepulerat.

Hōc proeliō factō,[2] reliquās[3] cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem facit atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ēius adventū permōtī, cum id quod ipsī vix diēbus xx[4] cōnfēcissent illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūius lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī superiōre bellō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare ēgit: "Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faciet, in eam partem ībunt atque ibi erunt Helvētiī ubi eōs cōnstitueris[5]; sī autem nōbīs bellum facere māvīs, revocā animum tuum ad memoriam et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Ūnum pāgum subitō adortus es, cum iī quī flūmen trānsierant suīs[6] auxilium ferre nōn possent; quam ob rem exīstimāre nōn dēbēs Rōmānōs Helvētiīs virtūte praestāre. Nōs magis virtūte quam īnsidiīs contendimus. Is locus ubi cōnstiterimus ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et caede exercitūs nōmen capiet."

Hīs Caesar ita respondit: "Eās rēs dē quibus dīxistis memoriā teneō. Sine causā Helvētiī illō tempore istam iniūriam populō Rōmānō intulērunt. Recentīs quoque iniūriās memoriā teneō. Contrā voluntātem meam iter per prōvinciam temptāvistis, agrōs sociōrum populī Rōmānī vāstāvistis. Dī immortālēs tam diū secundās rēs concessērunt, quō gravi-

[1] Ablative of time. [2] That is, *fought*.
[3] Put first for emphasis, but the translation of the clause must begin with ut.
[4] In reading Latin pronounce the Latin word for which a numeral sign is used.
[5] See section 155. [6] *to their comrades*.

ōre suppliciō vōs adficerent. Cum haec ita sint, tamen sī obsidēs ā vōbīs mihi dabuntur, ut ea quae polliceāminī vōs factūrōs intellegam, vōbīscum pācem faciam." Dīvicō respondit Helvētiōs obsidēs accipere, nōn dare solēre. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equitātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coēgerat, praemittit, quī videant quās in partīs hostēs iter faciant. Quī ācrius agmen secūtī inīquō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī occīduntur. Quō proeliō ēlātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum pepulerant, fortius resistere et nostrōs adorīrī coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat. Ita diēs circiter xv iter fēcērunt ut hostium agmen ā nostrō quīnque aut sex mīlia passuum abesset.

MEMORIAL OF CAESAR'S CONQUEST OF GAUL

LESSON LXVIII

432. Gerund. — The gerund is the neuter singular of the gerundive used as a substantive in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative cases (sections 489, 490, 491, 492, 497, 498).

Notice that the gerund of **eō** has **u** before the ending, instead of **e**. This spelling is often found also in the gerundives and gerunds of verbs of the third and fourth conjugations: **potiundus.**

433. Vocabulary

causā,[1] with gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of.*
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *of grain*; **rēs frūmentāria**, *supply of grain.* [frūmentum].
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; **impedīmenta** (pl.), *baggage.* [impediō].
mīlitāris, mīlitāre, *military*; **rēs mīlitāris**, *art of war.* [mīles].
novissimus, -a, -um,[2] *last*; **novissimum agmen**, *rear.*
scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge. omniscient.*

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum, *place.* [locus].
cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum, *settle*; also *encamp. residence.*
incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum, *urge on, rouse. excitement.*
perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum, *frighten*; **perterritus**, *panic-stricken.* [per + terreō].
renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātum, *report.* [nūntiō].

Exercises

434. 1. Nūlla est spēs superandī. 2. Nūlla est spēs rēgis superandī (*see 435*). 3. Renūntiātum est Gallōs spē oppidī potiundī adductōs prope cōnsēdisse. 4. Dēspērantēs dē oppidō expugnandō ad pugnandum incitārī nōn poterant. 5. Repentīnus impetus factus erat hostium perterrendōrum causā. 6. Summum iugum ad aciem īnstruendam est idōneum. 7. Equīs incitātīs collem celeriter ascendunt. 8. Equitēs nōbīs conlocandī sunt citrā flūmen quod in Rhodanum īnfluit, nē hostibus sit potestās trānseundī. 9. Neque nostrī in locum inīquiōrem pugnandī causā prōgressūrī sunt. 10. Legiōnēs hīc cōnsistent, equitēs reī frūmentāriae causā praemittentur. 11. Hic pāgus fīnem fugiendī nōndum fēcerat. 12. In imperātōre dēligendō scientia reī mīlitāris maximē est postulanda. 13. Mē ā dīcendō vix continēre

---

[1] This is the ablative of the noun. It regularly follows the genitive.
[2] This is the superlative of novus, *new.*

possum. 14. Legiōnēs duae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs erant.

435. Use of Gerund and Gerundive. — In sentence 1 **superandī** is the genitive of the gerund (*of conquering*); but in sentence 2 it is the genitive singular masculine of the gerundive, agreeing with **rēgis** (*of conquering the king*). Notice that the gerund has the construction of a noun, the gerundive that of an adjective. When the gerund would have a direct object, the gerundive is commonly used instead: so **rēgis superandī** instead of **rēgem superandī**. It is important that this use of the gerundive be carefully studied with reference to the following points: —

1. The gerundive agrees with a noun.
2. The noun is in the case in which the gerund would be, if it were used.
3. The gerundive is translated as the gerund would be, and the noun is translated as its direct object.
4. The translation is active, not passive.
5. The gerundive does not express the idea of necessity or propriety, as in the periphrastic conjugation.

436. 1. He sends the cavalry forward for the purpose of procuring a supply of grain. 2. Two legions had been placed in the rear for the purpose of defending the baggage. 3. In reporting the recent engagement he has spoken about Caesar's remarkable knowledge of the art of war. 4. We shall treat with him about settling on this side of the river. 5. The panic-stricken slave tried to escape by urging on his horse. 6. I had decided that I ought not to give rewards which no one deserved. 7. You urged them on to resisting. 8. I am about to make an end of speaking.

LESSON LXIX

437. Supine. — The supine of a verb has two forms of the fourth declension, the accusative and the ablative. The accusative is spelled the same as the form of the perfect participle which is given as one of the principal parts of the verb (sections 489, 490, 491, 492, 497, 498).

438. Vocabulary

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *dense, in close order.*
lūx, lūcis, f., *light. lucid.*
postrīdiē, adv., *the next day.* [posterus + diē
scūtum, -ī, n., *shield. scutcheon.*
tergum, -ī, n., *back.*

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum, *bring together;* **sē cōnferre,** *betake oneself, go.* [ferō].
lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, *harass.*
mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum, *change. immutable.*
sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.* [scientia].
vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn;* **terga vertere,** *flee.* [revertor].

Exercises

439. 1. Nostrī iugum oppugnandī oppidī causā ascendērunt. 2. Lēgātī veniunt pācem petītum (*see 440*). 3. Statuerat sibi aciem īnstruendam esse, quae novissimum agmen adorīrētur. 4. Hoc est optimum factū (*see 441*). 5. Timōre[1] perterritī terga vertērunt. 6. Nūntius victōriam nūntiātum missus est. 7. Prīmā lūce[2] impedīmentīs in ūnum locum conlātīs prōgressī sunt, ut castra oppugnārent. 8. Cōnfertissimā aciē scūta Gallīs magnō erant impedīmentō. 9. Quaesītum dē rē frūmentāriā ībimus. 10. Helvētiī itinere mūtātō agmen nostrum lacessere coepērunt. 11. Ille vir timōre

[1] This word need not be translated.

[2] That is, *at daybreak.*

perterritus id quod nōn vīderat prō vīsō[1] Caesarī renūntiāvit. 12. Postrīdiē tē sciente in urbem ad patrem meum dēfendendum vēnī. 13. Difficile dictū est quid exīstiment.

440. Use of Supine in *um*. — In sentence 2 **petītum** is the supine. It expresses purpose, and is to be translated *to seek*. The supine in **um** is used to express purpose with verbs of motion only.

441. Use of Supine in *ū*. — In sentence 4 **optimum factū** is to be translated *the best thing to do*. Only a few supines in **ū** are in use, and they are used chiefly with certain adjectives. Note those that you find, and the adjective with which each goes.

442. Review of Expressions of Purpose. — Purpose may be expressed in Latin in these various ways: —

1. The subjunctive with **ut** or **nē**.
2. The subjunctive with a relative (**quō** when the clause contains a comparative).
3. The accusative of the gerundive or gerund with **ad**.
4. The genitive of the gerundive or gerund with **causā**.
5. The supine in **um**.

Find in the sentences above examples of these five ways of expressing purpose, and rewrite sentence 2 in the first four ways.

443. 1. The horsemen fled, that they might avoid the danger. 2. They urged on their horses, that they might come to the bridge more quickly. 3. The next day we selected a hill on which to encamp. 4. At the foot of[2] the hill he will place his cavalry to harass the enemy's rear. 5. Weapons and military standards are brought together at daybreak. 6. We were in close order and prepared for[3] advancing. 7. He comes to see. 8. Do you ask who deserves this reward? 9. It is difficult to say. 10. I know that I cannot change my nature by increasing my knowledge.

---

[1] *for seen*, that is, *as seen*. [2] *at the foot of*, **sub**. [3] **ad**.

LESSON LXX

444. Vocabulary

gladius, -ī, m., *sword. gladiator.*
intervāllum, -ī, n., *interval.*
post, prep. with acc., *behind.*[1]
prope, prep.[2] with acc., *near.*
ut, conj., *as.*[3]

āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum, *turn aside.* [ā + vertō].
convertō, convertere, convertī, conversum, *turn about, reverse.* [vertō].
cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum, *become accustomed*; perfect, *have become accustomed*, that is, *be accustomed.*
nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum, *not know.* [sciō].
praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeceptum, with dat., *give directions, instruct.* [capiō].

Exercises

445. 1. Sī domī est, gaudēmus. 2. Caesar eī praecēperat nē hostium novissimum agmen lacesseret.[4] 3. Sī hostīs sequēbar, idem intervāllum semper cōnservābam. 4. Sī hostīs accēdere renūntiātum erat, impedīmenta post legiōnēs conlocāre cōnsuēverat. 5. Sī Caesar iter āverterit,[5] Helvētiī Rōmānōs perterritōs fugere exīstimābunt. 6. Postrīdiē pugnandī causā itinere conversō nostrōs sequī coepērunt. 7. Sī sententiam saepe mūtābis, nesciam quid velīs. 8. Nisi gladiīs ūtēminī, eōs nōn vincētis. 9. Multō diē[6] prope montem cōnsēdērunt. 10. Hoc tempus in rē frūmentāriā comparandā et in cōnferendīs scūtīs signīsque mīlitāribus cōnsūmpsistis. 11. In mediō colle,[7] ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, hostēs cōnfertissimam aciem īnstrūxerant.

---

[1] How is this preposition translated in expressions of time?
[2] Remember that this word may be used as an adverb also.
[3] When ut means *as*, the verb used with it is in the indicative.
[4] See section 268. [5] See section 155. [6] *late in the day.*
[7] That is, *half-way up the hill.* See page 105, foot-note 1.

446. Conditional Complexes. — Sentence 3 is a conditional complex, or a complex sentence made up of a condition and a conclusion. The clause **sī hostīs sequēbar** is the condition, and the clause **idem intervāllum semper cōnservābam** the conclusion. In sentence 8 **nisi gladiīs ūtēmini** is the condition. Notice that the conditions are introduced by **sī** and **nisi**. Find all the other conditional complexes above, and notice that present, past, or future action is represented in both clauses by the usual tense of the indicative.

447. 1. They had come to attack the camp before light. 2. I do not know what is being done behind my back. 3. Unless assistance comes, I shall instruct them to turn their horses about[1] and flee. 4. We were prepared, as you know, to fight with swords, if this seemed the best thing to do. 5. If they try to settle near your boundaries, you will rouse the state to arms and turn them aside. 6. He is accustomed to leave an interval between the legions. 7. You ought to turn labor into knowledge, if you can.

THE BLUNDER OF CONSIDIUS

Tandem ab explōrātōribus certior factus hostīs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus[2] castrīs octō, quae esset nātūra montis quī[3] cognōscerent mīsit. Renūntiātum est aditum esse facilem. Tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum lēgātum cum duābus legiōnibus et iīs ducibus[4] quī iter cognōverant summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sibi sit in animō dēmōnstrat. Ipse quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere quō hostēs ierant ad eōs contendit, equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī summam scientiam reī mīlitāris

[1] Use the ablative absolute, omitting *and*. Compare page 139, line 4.
[2] *his own*.
[3] The antecedent (*men*), which would be the object of **mīsit**, is omitted.
[4] *as guides*.

ROMAN ARMY ON THE MARCH

habēre dīcēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs repperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō incitātō ad eum venit, dīcit montem quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in[1] proximum collem dūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum[2] ā Caesare nē proelium committeret nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostīs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat suōsque ā proeliō continēbat. Tandem multō diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum id quod nōn vīdisset prō vīsō sibi renūntiāvisse. Eō diē intervāllō quod cōnsuēverat relictō hostīs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

Postrīdiē, quod rem frūmentāriam comparandam esse exīstimāvit, iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimābant, quod superiōribus locīs occupātīs proelium nōn commīsissent, mūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine sequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Postquam id vīdit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem dūxit equitātumque quī sustinēret hostium impetum mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterum; in summō iugō duās legiōnēs quās in Italiā nūper

---

[1] *up on.*

[2] *directions had been given to him*, that is, *he had been instructed.*

comparāverat conlocārī iussit. Helvētiī secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī cōnfertissimā aciē repulsō nostrō equitātū in prīmam nostram aciem impetum fēcērunt.

LESSON LXXI

448. Vocabulary

apertus, -a, -um, *open, unprotected.* **[aperiō].**
latus, lateris, n., *side, flank.* *lateral.*
trīduum, -ī, n., *three days.* **[trēs + diēs].**

cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum, *encourage, urge.* *exhortation.*
cōnspicor, cōnspicārī, cōnspicātus sum, *catch sight of, see.* **[cōnspectus].**
iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw.* *interjection.*
prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectum, *throw down, fling away.* **[prō + iaciō].**
intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum, *interrupt*; also (in the passive) *intervene.* **[inter + mittō].**
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, *bring back*; **pedem referre,** *fall back, retreat.* **[ferō].**
removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum, *move back, remove.* **[moveō].**

Exercises

449. 1. Sī arma conlāta in fossam iaciētis, vōs in dēditiōnem accipiet. 2. Sī arma in fossam iēceritis, vōs in dēditiōnem accipiet. 3. Sī arma in fossam iaciātis (*see 450*), vōs in dēditiōnem accipiat. 4. Sī arma in fossam iēcerītis, vōs in dēditiōnem accipiat. 5. Trīduō intermissō prīmā lūce prope flūmen castra posuistī. 6. Sī cōnfertissimā aciē scūta nōbīs sint impedīmentō, ea prōiciāmus. 7. Postrīdiē Caesar praecēpit ut prīmum suus, deinde omnium equī ex cōnspectū removērentur. 8. Sī Gallī nostrōs perturbātōs cōnspicātī proelium renovent, multī interficiantur. 9. Cohortātus suōs aciē conversā impetum gladiīs fierī iussit. 10. Sī hostīs

ā latere apertō[1] lacessīverīmus, pedem referant. 11. Sī tē ab hōc cōnsiliō āvertere possit, nōn sōlum tibi sed etiam sibi prōsit.

450. Future Conditional Complexes. — In sentence 3 **sī iaciātis, accipiat** is to be translated *if you should throw, he would receive.* Notice that the present subjunctive is used in both the condition and the conclusion to represent a future action. In sentence 4 **iēcerītis** is the perfect subjunctive (*should have thrown*), but it is best translated in the same way as **iaciātis** (*should throw*). You have seen that the future and future perfect indicative are also used in conditional complexes. The present and perfect subjunctive are less vivid. The perfect subjunctive, like the future perfect indicative, represents the action as completed in future time. Notice that more vivid future conditional complexes in English have *shall* or *will* in the conclusion, less vivid *should* or *would.*

451. 1. If you should change your opinion again, as you are accustomed to do, I should not know what you wish. 2. Unless the horses are removed, we shall be able to escape. 3. If the enemy should attack you on[2] the unprotected flank, I should urge you not to retreat.[3] 4. When they caught sight of us, they flung away[4] their weapons and fled, as you know. 5. If the same interval is kept, we shall arrive in three days. 6. If he should draw up his forces in an open place, the march would be interrupted. 7. If he should throw himself from this high building, he would be killed instantly.

---

[1] This was the right flank, which was not protected by the shields of the soldiers.

[2] **ab.** [3] See section 268. [4] Use the ablative absolute.

LESSON LXXII

452. Vocabulary

alter . . . alter, *one . . . the other*; **alterī . . . alterī**, *one party . . . the other party*.

commodē, adv., *conveniently, effectively*. [**incommodum**].

dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right*; as noun, **dextra, -ae**, f., *right hand*. *dexterity*.

hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.

inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack*. [**ops**].

sinister, sinistra, sinistrum, *left*; as noun, **sinistra, -ae**, f., *left hand*. *sinister*.

unde, adv., *whence*. [**undique**].

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart, wall*.

coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectum, *hurl*. [**iaciō**].

ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out, march out*. [**prōgredior**].

redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum, *lead back, bring back*. [**dūcō**].

restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtum, *restore*. [**statuō**].

vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum, *be vacant*.

Exercises

453. 1. Sinistrā scūtum, dextrā gladium teneō. 2. Sī dux abest, mūnere suō, ut cōnsuēvērunt, commodē funguntur. 3. Nisi dux abesset, mūnere suō fungerentur (*see 454*). 4. Sī hostīs vidērent, ex vāllō tēla conicerent. 5. Sī inopia tēlōrum fuit, oppugnātiōnem nōn sustinuērunt. 6. Nisi inopia tēlōrum fuisset, oppugnātiōnem complūrīs hōrās sustinuissent (*see 454*). 7. Sī tēla ā nōbīs iacī possent, nōn nōs converterēmus. 8. Alterī in eum locum unde erant ēgressī redūcēbantur, alterī prōgrediēbantur. 9. Nisi Helvētiī, ut Caesar praecēperat, oppida sua restituissent, Germānī agrōs vacantis occupāvissent. 10. Caesar, sī sē ad pedēs ēius prōiēcissent pācemque petīvissent, concessisset. 11. Hōc tōtō proeliō āversum hostem[1] vidēre nēmō potuit. 12. Longō intervāllō intermissō Rōmam vēnī.

---

[1] That is, *the back of an enemy*.

454. Present and Past Conditional Complexes. — Sentence 3 is to be translated *if the leader were not absent, they would perform their duty;* and you are to understand that the leader is absent and they are not performing their duty. So in sentence 6 (*if there had not been a lack, they would have sustained*) you are to understand that there was a lack and they did not sustain. These conditional complexes, therefore, are contrary to fact. Notice that the past subjunctive is used in both the condition and the conclusion to imply the non-occurrence of an action in present time, the past perfect subjunctive to imply the non-occurrence of an action in past time. You have seen that the indicative is used in present and past conditional complexes which imply neither the occurrence nor the non-occurrence of the action. These are called neutral.

455. Summary of Conditional Complexes

LATIN	ENGLISH
PRESENT AND PAST NEUTRAL	
Present, past, perfect, or past perfect indicative.	Present, past, perfect, or past perfect indicative.
MORE VIVID FUTURE	
Future or future perfect indicative.	Present indicative in condition. *Shall* or *will* in conclusion.
LESS VIVID FUTURE	
Present or perfect subjunctive.	*Should* in condition. *Should* or *would* in conclusion.
PRESENT CONTRARY TO FACT	
Past subjunctive.	*Were* or past in condition. *Should* or *would* in conclusion.
PAST CONTRARY TO FACT	
Past perfect subjunctive.	*Had* in condition. *Should have* or *would have* in conclusion.

456. 1. If that place were vacant, you would be able to seize it. 2. In two hours they would have gone out, if the scouts had not caught sight of the enemy near the camp. 3. If the attack had been made from this side, the javelins would have been hurled from the rampart less effectively. 4. If the road were open, I should remove the garrison on account of the want of grain. 5. If I did not know, I should think that they had retreated. 6. If you had not restored your towns, I should have made war upon you again. 7. He urged that they should be led back to the general. 8. One legion was on the right wing, the other on the left.

THE DEFEAT AND SURRENDER OF THE HELVETIANS

Caesar prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū remōtīs equīs, ut spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium aciem reppulērunt. Eā perturbātā gladiīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Cōnfertissimā aciē scūta Gallīs magnō erant impedīmentō. Sinistrā enim impedītā commodē pugnāre nōn poterant. Multī etiam māluērunt scūtum prōicere et apertō corpore pugnāre. Tandem vulneribus cōnfectī et pedem referre et, quod mōns aberat circiter mīlle passūs, eō sē recipere coepērunt. Occupātō monte et accēdentibus nostrīs Bōiī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant[1] et novissimīs praesidiō erant, nostrōs ab latere apertō cōnātī sunt circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus resistere et proelium renovāre coepērunt. Caesaris prīma et secunda aciēs victīs restitit; tertia sē convertit, ut impetum venientium sustinēret.

[1] That is *brought up the rear*.

SURRENDER OF BARBARIANS TO ROMAN GENERAL

Ita diū atque ācriter pugnātum est.[1] Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta sua sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad noctem pugnārētur, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, propterea quod prō vāllō impedīmentīs ūtēbantur et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientīs tēla coniciēbant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est. Iī quī ex eō proeliō effūgerant eā tōtā nocte ierunt nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō; in fīnīs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum propter vulnera mīlitum nostrī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eī in itinere occurrissent sēque ad pedēs prōiēcissent pācemque petīvissent, eōs suum adventum exspectāre iussit. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs et arma postulāvit. Dum ea cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā circiter hominum mīlia sex, aut arbitrātī[2] Caesarem armīs trāditīs sē suppliciō adfectūrum esse aut spē salūtis adductī, prīmā nocte[3] ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnīsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Hōs reductōs Caesar in hostium numerō habuit[4]; reliquōs omnīs obsidibus armīsque trāditīs in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs in fīnīs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī atque oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere iussit.

---

[1] This is the impersonal use of the passive (*it was fought*). It may be translated *they fought* or *the battle raged.*

[2] This is masculine in accordance with the sense, though it agrees with mīlia in case.

[3] That is *at nightfall.*

[4] That is *treated as enemies.* He probably put them to death.

CONSPECTUS OF INFLECTIONS

457. First Declension: Nouns

sagitta, f., *arrow*

	SINGULAR	ENDINGS
NOMINATIVE:	sagitta, *an arrow, the arrow.*	a
GENITIVE:	sagittae, *of an arrow, the arrow.*	ae
DATIVE:	sagittae, *to* or *for an arrow, the arrow.*	ae
ACCUSATIVE:	sagittam, *an arrow, the arrow.*	am
ABLATIVE:	sagittā, *by* or *with an arrow, the arrow.*	ā
	PLURAL	
NOMINATIVE:	sagittae, *arrows, the arrows.*	ae
GENITIVE:	sagittārum, *of arrows, the arrows.*	ārum
DATIVE:	sagittīs, *to* or *for arrows, the arrows.*	īs
ACCUSATIVE:	sagittās, *arrows, the arrows.*	ās
ABLATIVE:	sagittīs, *by* or *with arrows, the arrows.*	īs

458. Second Declension: Nouns

	mūrus, m. *wall*		**bellum**, n. *war*	
	SINGULAR			
		MASCULINE ENDINGS		NEUTER ENDINGS
NOM.	mūrus	us	bellum	um
GEN.	mūrī	ī	bellī	ī
DAT.	mūrō	ō	bellō	ō
ACC.	mūrum	um	bellum	um
ABL.	mūrō	ō	bellō	ō
	PLURAL			
NOM.	mūrī	ī	bella	a
GEN.	mūrōrum	ōrum	bellōrum	ōrum
DAT.	mūrīs	īs	bellīs	īs
ACC.	mūrōs	ōs	bella	a
ABL.	mūrīs	īs	bellīs	īs

	fīlius, m. *son*	**cōnsilium**, n. *plan*
	SINGULAR	
NOM.	fīlius	cōnsilium
GEN.	fīlī	cōnsilī
DAT.	fīliō	cōnsiliō
ACC.	fīlium	cōnsilium
ABL.	fīliō	cōnsiliō
	PLURAL	
NOM.	fīliī	cōnsilia
GEN.	fīliōrum	cōnsiliōrum
DAT.	fīliīs	cōnsiliīs
ACC.	fīliōs	cōnsilia
ABL.	fīliīs	cōnsiliīs

	puer, m. *boy*	**ager**, m. *field*	**vir**, m. *man*
	SINGULAR		
NOM.	puer	ager	vir
GEN.	puerī	agrī	virī
DAT.	puerō	agrō	virō
ACC.	puerum	agrum	virum
ABL.	puerō	agrō	virō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	puerī	agrī	virī
GEN.	puerōrum	agrōrum	virōrum
DAT.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs
ACC.	puerōs	agrōs	virōs
ABL.	puerīs	agrīs	virīs

459. Third Declension: Nouns with Genitive Plural in *um*

	hiems, f. *winter*	**cōnsul**, m. *consul*	**arbor**, f. *tree*	
		SINGULAR		M. AND F. ENDINGS
NOM.	hiems	cōnsul	arbor	s *or none*
GEN.	hiemis	cōnsulis	arboris	is
DAT.	hiemī	cōnsulī	arborī	ī
ACC.	hiemem	cōnsulem	arborem	em
ABL.	hieme	cōnsule	arbore	e
		PLURAL		
NOM.	hiemēs	cōnsulēs	arborēs	ēs
GEN.	hiemum	cōnsulum	arborum	um
DAT.	hiemibus	cōnsulibus	arboribus	ibus
ACC.	hiemēs	cōnsulēs	arborēs	ēs
ABL.	hiemibus	cōnsulibus	arboribus	ibus

	leader **dux**, m.	**rēx**, m. *king*	**palūs**, f. *swamp*	**virtūs**, f. *bravery*
		SINGULAR		
NOM.	dux	rēx	palūs	virtūs
GEN.	ducis	rēgis	palūdis	virtūtis
DAT.	ducī	rēgī	palūdī	virtūtī
ACC.	ducem	rēgem	palūdem	virtūtem
ABL.	duce	rēge	palūde	virtūte
		PLURAL		
NOM.	ducēs	rēgēs	palūdēs	virtūtēs
GEN.	ducum	rēgum	palūdum	virtūtum
DAT.	ducibus	rēgibus	palūdibus	virtūtibus
ACC.	ducēs	rēgēs	palūdēs	virtūtēs
ABL.	ducibus	rēgibus	palūdibus	virtūtibus

	centuriō, m. *centurion*	**homō**, m. and f. *man*	**mīles**, m. *soldier*	**pater**, m. *father*
		SINGULAR		
NOM.	centuriō	homō	mīles	pater
GEN.	centuriōn**ī**	homin**is**	mīlit**is**	patr**is**
DAT.	centuriōn**ī**	homin**ī**	mīlit**ī**	patr**ī**
ACC.	centuriōn**em**	homin**em**	mīlit**em**	patr**em**
ABL.	centuriōn**e**	homin**e**	mīlit**e**	patr**e**
		PLURAL		
NOM.	centuriōn**ēs**	homin**ēs**	mīlit**ēs**	patr**ēs**
GEN.	centuriōn**um**	homin**um**	mīlit**um**	patr**um**
DAT.	centuriōn**ibus**	homin**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**	patr**ibus**
ACC.	centuriōn**ēs**	homin**ēs**	mīlit**ēs**	patr**ēs**
ABL.	centuriōn**ibus**	homin**ibus**	mīlit**ibus**	patr**ibus**

	nōmen, n. *name*	**genus**, n. *race*	NEUTER ENDINGS
	SINGULAR		
NOM.	nōmen	genus	*none*
GEN.	nōmin**is**	gener**is**	**is**
DAT.	nōmin**ī**	gener**ī**	**ī**
ACC.	nōmen	genus	*none*
ABL.	nōmin**e**	gener**e**	**e**
	PLURAL		
NOM.	nōmin**a**	gener**a**	**a**
GEN.	nōmin**um**	gener**um**	**um**
DAT.	nōmin**ibus**	gener**ibus**	**ibus**
ACC.	nōmin**a**	gener**a**	**a**
ABL.	nōmin**ibus**	gener**ibus**	**ibus**

460. Third Declension: Nouns with Genitive Plural in *ium*

	hostis, m. *enemy*	**urbs**, f. *city*	
		SINGULAR	
			M. AND F. ENDINGS
NOM.	hostis	urbs	**is** *or* **s**
GEN.	hostis	urbis	**is**
DAT.	hostī	urbī	**ī**
ACC.	hostem	urbem	**em**
ABL.	hoste	urbe	**e**
		PLURAL	
NOM.	hostēs	urbēs	**ēs**
GEN.	hostium	urbium	**ium**
DAT.	hostibus	urbibus	**ibus**
ACC.	hostīs *or* hostēs	urbīs *or* urbēs	**īs** *or* **ēs**
ABL.	hostibus	urbibus	**ibus**

	īnsigne, n. *decoration*	**animal**, n. *animal*	**calcar**, n. *spur*	
		SINGULAR		
				NEUTER ENDINGS
NOM.	īnsigne	animal	calcar	**e** *or none*
GEN.	īnsignis	animālis	calcāris	**is**
DAT.	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	**i**
ACC.	īnsigne	animal	calcar	**e** *or none*
ABL.	īnsignī	animālī	calcārī	**i**
		PLURAL		
NOM.	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	**ia**
GEN.	īnsignium	animālium	calcārium	**ium**
DAT.	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	**ibus**
ACC.	īnsignia	animālia	calcāria	**ia**
ABL.	īnsignibus	animālibus	calcāribus	**ibus**

461. Fourth Declension: Nouns

	exercitus, m. *army*		**cornū**, n. *horn*	
		SINGULAR		
		MASCULINE ENDINGS		NEUTER ENDINGS
NOM.	exercit**us**	**us**	corn**ū**	**ū**
GEN.	exercit**ūs**	**ūs**	corn**ūs**	**ūs**
DAT.	exercit**uī**	**uī**	corn**ū**	**ū**
ACC.	exercit**um**	**um**	corn**ū**	**ū**
ABL.	exercit**ū**	**ū**	corn**ū**	**ū**
		PLURAL		
NOM.	exercit**ūs**	**ūs**	corn**ua**	**ua**
GEN.	exercit**uum**	**uum**	corn**uum**	**uum**
DAT.	exercit**ibus**	**ibus**	corn**ibus**	**ibus**
ACC.	exercit**ūs**	**ūs**	corn**ua**	**ua**
ABL.	exercit**ibus**	**ibus**	corn**ibus**	**ibus**

462. Fifth Declension: Nouns

	diēs, m. *day*	**rēs**, f. *thing*	
		SINGULAR	
			ENDINGS
NOM.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	**ēs**
GEN.	di**ēī**	re**ī**	**ēī** *or* **eī**
DAT.	di**ēī**	re**ī**	**ēī** *or* **eī**
ACC.	di**em**	r**em**	**em**
ABL.	di**ē**	r**ē**	**ē**
		PLURAL	
NOM.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	**ēs**
GEN.	di**ērum**	r**ērum**	**ērum**
DAT.	di**ēbus**	r**ēbus**	**ēbus**
ACC.	di**ēs**	r**ēs**	**ēs**
ABL.	di**ēbus**	r**ēbus**	**ēbus**

463. Irregular Nouns

	deus, m. *god*	domus, f. *home*	vīs, f. *force*
		SINGULAR	
NOM.	deus	domus	vīs
GEN.	deī	domūs	vīs
DAT.	deō	domuī	vī
ACC.	deum	domum	vim
ABL.	deō	domō	vī
		PLURAL	
NOM.	dī	domūs	vīrēs
GEN.	deōrum *or* deum	domōrum	vīrium
DAT.	dīs	domibus	vīribus
ACC.	deōs	domōs *or* domūs	vīrīs *or* vīrēs
ABL.	dīs	domibus	vīribus

464. First and Second Declensions: Adjectives

bonus, *good*

	M.	F.	N.
	SINGULAR		
NOM.	bonus	bona	bonum
GEN.	bonī	bonae	bonī
DAT.	bonō	bonae	bonō
ACC.	bonum	bonam	bonum
ABL.	bonō	bonā	bonō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	bonī	bonae	bona
GEN.	bonōrum	bonārum	bonōrum
DAT.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs
ACC.	bonōs	bonās	bona
ABL.	bonīs	bonīs	bonīs

	līber, *free*			**integer**, *fresh*		
			SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	līber	lībera	līberum	integer	integra	integrum
GEN.	līberī	līberae	līberī	integrī	integrae	integrī
DAT.	līberō	līberae	līberō	integrō	integrae	integrō
ACC.	līberum	līberam	līberum	integrum	integram	integrum
ABL.	līberō	līberā	līberō	integrō	integrā	integrō
			PLURAL			
NOM.	līberī	līberae	lībera	integrī	integrae	integra
GEN.	līberōrum	līberārum	līberōrum	integrōrum	integrārum	integrōrum
DAT.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs	integrīs	integrīs	integrīs
ACC.	līberōs	līberās	lībera	integrōs	integrās	integra
ABL.	līberīs	līberīs	līberīs	integrīs	integrīs	integrīs

465. Declension of Pronominal Adjectives

	ūnus, *one*			**alius**, *other*		
			SINGULAR			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ūnus	ūna	ūnum	alius	alia	aliud
GEN.	ūnīus	ūnīus	ūnīus	alīus	alīus	alīus
DAT.	ūnī	ūnī	ūnī	aliī	aliī	aliī
ACC.	ūnum	ūnam	ūnum	alium	aliam	aliud
ABL.	ūnō	ūnā	ūnō	aliō	aliā	aliō

	alter, *the other*			**uter**, *which?*		
NOM.	alter	altera	alterum	uter	utra	utrum
GEN.	alterīus	alterīus	alterīus	utrīus	utrīus	utrīus
DAT.	alterī	alterī	alterī	utrī	utrī	utrī
ACC.	alterum	alteram	alterum	utrum	utram	utrum
ABL.	alterō	alterā	alterō	utrō	utrā	utrō

466. Third Declension: Adjectives of Three Endings

ācer, *sharp*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ācer	ācris	ācre
GEN.	ācris	ācris	ācris
DAT.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī
ACC.	ācrem	ācrem	ācre
ABL.	ācrī	ācrī	ācrī

PLURAL

NOM.	ācrēs	ācrēs	ācria
GEN.	ācrium	ācrium	ācrium
DAT.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus
ACC.	ācrīs *or* ācrēs	ācrīs *or* ācrēs	ācria
ABL.	ācribus	ācribus	ācribus

467. Third Declension: Adjectives of Two Endings

omnis, *all*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	omnis	omne	omnēs	omnia
GEN.	omnis	omnis	omnium	omnium
DAT.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus
ACC.	omnem	omne	omnīs *or* omnēs	omnia
ABL.	omnī	omnī	omnibus	omnibus

468. Third Declension: Adjectives of One Ending

ingēns, *enormous*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	ingēns	ingēns	ingentēs	ingentia
GEN.	ingentis	ingentis	ingentium	ingentium
DAT.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentibus	ingentibus
ACC.	ingentem	ingēns	ingentīs *or* ingentēs	ingentia
ABL.	ingentī	ingentī	ingentibus	ingentibus

469. Third Declension: Irregular Adjective of One Ending

vetus, *old*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N
NOM.	vetus	vetus	veterēs	vetera
GEN.	veteris	veteris	veterum	veterum
DAT.	veterī	veterī	veteribus	veteribus
ACC.	veterem	vetus	veterēs	vetera
ABL.	vetere	vetere	veteribus	veteribus

470. Third Declension: Present Participles

amāns, *loving*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	amāns	amāns	amantēs	amantia
GEN.	amantis	amantis	amantium	amantium
DAT.	amantī	amantī	amantibus	amantibus
ACC.	amantem	amāns	amantīs *or* amantēs	amantia
ABL.	amante	amante	amantibus	amantibus

471. Third Declension: Comparatives

longior, *longer*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	longior	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
GEN.	longiōris	longiōris	longiōrum	longiōrum
DAT.	longiōrī	longiōrī	longiōribus	longiōribus
ACC.	longiōrem	longius	longiōrēs	longiōra
ABL.	longiōre	longiōre	longiōribus	longiōribus

472. Third Declension: Irregular Comparative

plūs, *more*

	SINGULAR		PLURAL	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	*none*	plūs	plūrēs	plūra
GEN.	*none*	plūris	plūrium	plūrium
DAT.	*none*	*none*	plūribus	plūribus
ACC.	*none*	plūs	plūris *or* plūrēs	plūra
ABL.	*none*	plūre	plūribus	plūribus

473. Regular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
longus, *long*.	longior, *longer*.	longissimus, *longest*.
nōbilis, *noble*.	nōbilior, *nobler*.	nōbilissimus, *noblest*.
audāx, *bold*.	audācior, *bolder*.	audācissimus, *boldest*.
potēns, *powerful*.	potentior, *more powerful*.	potentissimus, *most powerful*.

474. Comparison of Adjectives in *er*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
līber, *free*.	līberior.	līberrimus.
crēber, *frequent*.	crēbrior.	crēberrimus.
ācer, *sharp*.	ācrior.	ācerrimus.

475. Comparison of Certain Adjectives in *ilis*

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
facilis, *easy*.	facilior.	facillimus.
difficilis, *difficult*.	difficilior.	difficillimus.
similis, *like*.	similior.	simillimus.
dissimilis, *unlike*.	dissimilior.	dissimillimus.
humilis, *low*.	humilior.	humillimus.

476. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
bonus, *good.*	melior, *better.*	optimus, *best.*
malus, *bad.*	pēior, *worse.*	pessimus, *worst.*
magnus, *great.*	māior, *greater.*	maximus, *greatest.*
parvus, *little.*	minor, *less.*	minimus, *least.*
multus, *much.*	plūs, *more.*	plūrimus, *most.*
senex, *old.*	senior *or* māior nātū, *older.*	maximus nātū, *oldest.*
iuvenis, *young.*	iūnior *or* minor nātū, *younger.*	minimus nātū, *youngest.*

477. Regular Comparison of Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
lātē, *widely.*	lātius, *more widely.*	lātissimē, *most widely.*
līberē, *freely.*	līberius, *more freely.*	līberrimē, *most freely.*
ācriter, *sharply.*	ācrius, *more sharply.*	ācerrimē, *most sharply.*
fortiter, *bravely.*	fortius, *more bravely.*	fortissimē, *most bravely.*

478. Irregular Adverbs

POSITIVE	COMPARATIVE	SUPERLATIVE
benĕ, *well.*	melius, *better.*	optimē, *best.*
malĕ, *badly.*	pēius, *worse.*	pessimē, *worst.*
multum, *much.*	plūs, *more.*	plūrimum, *most.*
diū, *long.*	diūtius, *longer.*	diūtissimē, *longest.*

479. Numerals

SIGN	CARDINAL	ORDINAL
I	ūnus, *one.*	prīmus, *first.*
II	duo, *two.*	secundus, *second.*
III	trēs, *three.*	tertius, *third.*
IIII *or* IV	quattuor, *four.*	quārtus, *fourth.*
V	quīnque, *five.*	quīntus, *fifth.*
VI	sex	sextus
VII	septem	septimus
VIII	octō	octāvus
VIIII *or* IX	novem	nōnus
X	decem	decimus
XI	ūndecim	ūndecimus
XII	duodecim	duodecimus
XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus

XIIII *or* XIV	quattuor**decim**	quārtus **decimus**
XV	quīn**decim**	quīntus **decimus**
XVI	sē**decim**	sextus **decimus**
XVII	septen**decim**	septimus **decimus**
XVIII	duodē**vīgintī**	duodē**vīcēnsimus**
XVIIII *or* XIX	ūndē**vīgintī**	ūndē**vīcēnsimus**
XX	**vīgintī**	**vīcēnsimus**
XXI	**vīgintī** ūnus *or* ūnus et **vīgintī**	**vīcēnsimus** prīmus
XXII	**vīgintī** duo *or* duo et **vīgintī**	**vīcēnsimus** secundus
XXIII	**vīgintī** trēs	**vīcēnsimus** tertius
XXIIII *or* XXIV	**vīgintī** quattuor	**vīcēnsimus** quārtus
XXV	**vīgintī** quīnque	**vīcēnsimus** quīntus
XXVI	**vīgintī** sex	**vīcēnsimus** sextus
XXVII	**vīgintī** septem	**vīcēnsimus** septimus
XXVIII	duodē**trīgintā**	duodē**trīcēnsimus**
XXVIIII *or* XXIX	ūndē**trīgintā**	ūndē**trīcēnsimus**
XXX	**trīgintā**	**trīcēnsimus**
XXXX *or* XL	quadrā**gintā**	quadrā**gēnsimus**
L	quīnquā**gintā**	quīnquā**gēnsimus**
LX	sexā**gintā**	sexā**gēnsimus**
LXX	septuā**gintā**	septuā**gēnsimus**
LXXX	octō**gintā**	octō**gēnsimus**
LXXXX *or* XC	nōnā**gintā**	nōnā**gēnsimus**
C	centum	cen**tēnsimus**
CI	centum ūnus *or* centum et ūnus	cen**tēnsimus** prīmus
CXXI	centum **vīgintī** ūnus	cen**tēnsimus** **vīcēnsimus** prīmus
CC	du**centī**	du**centēnsimus**
CCC	tre**centī**	tre**centēnsimus**
CCCC	quadrin**gentī**	quadrin**gentēnsimus**
D	quīn**gentī**	quīn**gentēnsimus**
DC	ses**centī**	ses**centēnsimus**
DCC	septin**gentī**	septin**gentēnsimus**
DCCC	octin**gentī**	octin**gentēnsimus**
DCCCC	nōn**gentī**	nōn**gentēnsimus**
M	mīlle	mīl**lēnsimus**
MM	duo mīlia	bis mīl**lēnsimus**

480. Declension of Certain Numerals

duo, *two*

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	duo	duae	duo
GEN.	duōrum	duārum	duōrum
DAT.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus
ACC.	duōs *or* duo	duās	duo
ABL.	duōbus	duābus	duōbus

trēs, *three*

	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	trēs	tria
GEN.	trium	trium
DAT.	tribus	tribus
ACC.	trīs *or* trēs	tria
ABL.	tribus	tribus

mīlle, *thousand*

	SING.	PL. (N.)
NOM.	mīlle	mīlia
GEN.	mīlle	mīlium
DAT.	mīlle	mīlibus
ACC.	mīlle	mīlia
ABL.	mīlle	mīlibus

481. Declension of Personal Pronouns

SINGULAR

	FIRST PERSON	SECOND PERSON
NOM.	ego, *I.*	tū, *you.*
GEN.	meī, *of me.*	tuī, *of you.*
DAT.	mihi	tibi
ACC.	mē	tē
ABL.	mē	tē

PLURAL

NOM.	nōs, *we.*	vōs, *you.*
GEN.	nostrum *and* nostrī, *of us.*	vestrum *and* vestrī, *of you.*
DAT.	nōbīs	vōbīs
ACC.	nōs	vōs
ABL.	nōbīs	vōbīs

482. Declension of Reflexive Pronoun

suī, *self*

GEN.	suī
DAT.	sibi
ACC.	sē *or* sēsē
ABL.	sē *or* sēsē

483. Declension of Demonstrative Pronouns

hic, *this* **ille**, *that*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	hic	haec	hoc	ille	illa	illud
GEN.	hūius	hūius	hūius	illīus	illīus	illīus
DAT.	huic	huic	huic	illī	illī	illī
ACC.	hunc	hanc	hoc	illum	illam	illud
ABL.	hōc	hāc	hōc	illō	illā	illō

PLURAL

NOM.	hī	hae	haec	illī	illae	illa
GEN.	hōrum	hārum	hōrum	illōrum	illārum	illōrum
DAT.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs
ACC.	hōs	hās	haec	illōs	illās	illa
ABL.	hīs	hīs	hīs	illīs	illīs	illīs

iste, *that* (*of yours*), is declined like **ille**.

is, *this* or *that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	is	ea	id	ī *or* eī	eae	ea
GEN.	ēius	ēius	ēius	eōrum	eārum	eōrum
DAT.	eī	eī	eī	iīs *or* eīs	iīs *or* eīs	iīs *or* eīs
ACC.	eum	eam	id	eōs	eās	ea
ABL.	eō	eā	eō	iīs *or* eīs	iīs *or* eīs	iīs *or* eīs

idem, *the same*

SINGULAR

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	īdem	eadem	idem
GEN.	ēiusdem	ēiusdem	ēiusdem
DAT.	eīdem	eīdem	eīdem
ACC.	eundem	eandem	idem
ABL.	eōdem	eādem	eōdem

	PLURAL		
NOM.	īdem *or* eīdem	eaedem	eadem
GEN.	eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
DAT.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem
ACC.	eōsdem	eāsdem	eadem
ABL.	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem	īsdem *or* eīsdem

484. Declension of Intensive Pronoun

ipse, *self*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	ipse	ipsa	ipsum	ipsī	ipsae	ipsa
GEN.	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsīus	ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
DAT.	ipsī	ipsī	ipsī	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs
ACC.	ipsum	ipsam	ipsum	ipsōs	ipsās	ipsa
ABL.	ipsō	ipsā	ipsō	ipsīs	ipsīs	ipsīs

485. Declension of Relative Pronoun

quī, *who, which, that*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quī	quae	quod	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quod	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

486. Declension of Interrogative Pronoun

quis, *who? which? what?*

	SINGULAR			PLURAL		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae	quid (quod)	quī	quae	quae
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	cui	cui	cui	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)	quōs	quās	quae
ABL.	quō	quā	quō	quibus	quibus	quibus

487. Declension of Indefinite Pronouns

quis, *any*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quis (quī)	quae *or* qua	quid (quod)
GEN.	cūius	cūius	cūius
DAT.	cui	cui	cui
ACC.	quem	quam	quid (quod)
ABL.	quō	quā	quō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	quī	quae	quae *or* qua
GEN.	quōrum	quārum	quōrum
DAT.	quibus	quibus	quibus
ACC.	quōs	quās	quae *or* qua
ABL.	quibus	quibus	quibus

aliquis, *some*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	aliquis (aliquī)	aliqua	aliquid (aliquod)
GEN.	alicūius	alicūius	alicūius
DAT.	alicui	alicui	alicui
ACC.	aliquem	aliquam	aliquid (aliquod)
ABL.	aliquō	aliquā	aliquō
	PLURAL		
NOM.	aliquī	aliquae	aliqua
GEN.	aliquōrum	aliquārum	aliquōrum
DAT.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus
ACC.	aliquōs	aliquās	aliqua
ABL.	aliquibus	aliquibus	aliquibus

quisque, *each*

	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quisque	quaeque	quidque (quodque)
GEN.	cūiusque	cūiusque	cūiusque
DAT.	cuique	cuique	cuique
ACC.	quemque	quamque	quidque (quodque)
ABL.	quōque	quāque	quōque

quīdam, *a certain*

	SINGULAR		
	M.	F.	N.
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quiddam (quoddam)
GEN.	cūiusdam	cūiusdam	cūiusdam
DAT.	cuidam	cuidam	cuidam
ACC.	quendam	quandam	quiddam (quoddam)
ABL.	quōdam	quādam	quōdam
	PLURAL		
NOM.	quīdam	quaedam	quaedam
GEN.	quōrundam	quārundam	quōrundam
DAT.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam
ACC.	quōsdam	quāsdam	quaedam
ABL.	quibusdam	quibusdam	quibusdam

quisquam, *any one*

	M. AND F.	N.
NOM.	quisquam	quicquam
GEN.	cūiusquam	cūiusquam
DAT.	cuiquam	cuiquam
ACC.	quemquam	quicquam
ABL.	quōquam	quōquam

488. Personal Endings

	SINGULAR				
PERSON	ACTIVE	PASSIVE	PERF. IND. ACT.	PRES. IMP. ACT.	PRES. IMP. PASS
FIRST:	**ō** *or* **m**	**r**	**ī**		
SECOND:	**s**	**ris** *or* **re**	**istī**	*none*	**re**
THIRD:	**t**	**tur**	**it**		
	PLURAL				
FIRST:	**mus**	**mur**	**imus**		
SECOND:	**tis**	**minī**	**istis**	**te**	**minī**
THIRD:	**nt**	**ntur**	**ērunt** *or* **ēre**		

489. First Conjugation

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *love*

Present Indicative Active

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	**amō,** *I love, am loving, do love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amās,** *you love, are loving, do love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amat,** *he (she, it) loves, is loving, does love.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	**amāmus,** *we love, are loving, do love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amātis,** *you love, are loving, do love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amant,** *they love, are loving, do love.*

Past Indicative Active

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	**amābam,** *I was loving, loved, did love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amābās,** *you were loving, loved, did love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amābat,** *he was loving, loved, did love.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	**amābāmus,** *we were loving, loved, did love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amābātis,** *you were loving, loved, did love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amābant,** *they were loving, loved, did love.*

Future Indicative Active

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	**amābō,** *I shall love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amābis,** *you will love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amābit,** *he will love.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	**amābimus,** *we shall love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amābitis,** *you will love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amābunt,** *they will love.*

First Conjugation

amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *love*

Present Indicative Passive

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON: amor, *I am (being) loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amāris *or* amāre, *you are (being) loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amātur, *he (she, it) is (being) loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON: amāmur, *we are (being) loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amāminī, *you are (being) loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amantur, *they are (being) loved.*

Past Indicative Passive

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON: amābar, *I was (being) loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amābāris *or* amābāre, *you were (being) loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amābātur, *he was (being) loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON: amābāmur, *we were (being) loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amābāminī, *you were (being) loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amābantur, *they were (being) loved.*

Future Indicative Passive

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON: amābor, *I shall be loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amāberis *or* amābere, *you will be loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amābitur, *he will be loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON: amābimur, *we shall be loved.*
SECOND PERSON: amābiminī, *you will be loved.*
THIRD PERSON: amābuntur, *they will be loved.*

Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	**amāv**ī, *I have loved, loved, did love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amāvist**ī, *you have loved, loved, did love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amāvit**, *he has loved, loved, did love.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	**amāvimus**, *we have loved, loved, did love.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amāvistis**, *you have loved, loved, did love.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amāvērunt** *or* **amāvēre**, *they have loved, loved, did love.*

Past Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	**amāveram**, *I had loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amāverās**, *you had loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amāverat**, *he had loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	**amāverāmus**, *we had loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amāverātis**, *you had loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amāverant**, *they had loved.*

Future Perfect Indicative Active

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	**amāverō**, *I shall have loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amāveris**, *you will have loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amāverit**, *he will have loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	**amāverimus**, *we shall have loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	**amāveritis**, *you will have loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	**amāverint**, *they will have loved.*

Perfect Indicative Passive

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	amātus **sum**, *I have been loved, was loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātus **es**, *you have been loved, were loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	amātus **est**, *he has been loved, was loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	amātī **sumus**, *we have been loved, were loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātī **estis**, *you have been loved, were loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	amātī **sunt**, *they have been loved, were loved.*

Past Perfect Indicative Passive

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	amātus **eram**, *I had been loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātus **erās**, *you had been loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	amātus **erat**, *he had been loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	amātī **erāmus**, *we had been loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātī **erātis**, *you had been loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	amātī **erant**, *they had been loved.*

Future Perfect Indicative Passive

SINGULAR

FIRST PERSON:	amātus **erō**, *I shall have been loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātus **eris**, *you will have been loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	amātus **erit**, *he will have been loved.*

PLURAL

FIRST PERSON:	amātī **erimus**, *we shall have been loved.*
SECOND PERSON:	amātī **eritis**, *you will have been loved.*
THIRD PERSON:	amātī **erunt**, *they will have been loved.*

Subjunctive Active

	Present	Past	Perfect	Past Perfect
		SINGULAR		
FIRST PERSON:	**amem**	**amārem**	**amāverim**	**amāvissem**
SECOND PERSON:	**amēs**	**amārēs**	**amāverīs**	**amāvissēs**
THIRD PERSON:	**amet**	**amāret**	**amāverit**	**amāvisset**
		PLURAL		
FIRST PERSON:	**amēmus**	**amārēmus**	**amāverīmus**	**amāvissēmus**
SECOND PERSON:	**amētis**	**amārētis**	**amāverītis**	**amāvissētis**
THIRD PERSON:	**ament**	**amārent**	**amāverint**	**amāvissent**

Present Imperative Active

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
SECOND PERSON:	**amā**, *love (thou)*.	**amāte**, *love (ye)*.

Infinitive

PRESENT ACTIVE: **amāre**, *to love.*
PERFECT ACTIVE: **amāvisse**, *to have loved.*
FUTURE ACTIVE: **amātūrus esse**, *to be about to love.*

Participles

PRESENT ACTIVE: **amāns**, *loving.*
FUTURE ACTIVE: **amātūrus**, *about to love.*

	Gerund	Supine
GEN.	**amandī**, *of loving.*	
DAT.	**amandō**, *for loving.*	
ACC.	**amandum**, *loving.*	**amātum**, *to love.*
ABL.	**amandō**, *by loving.*	**amātū**, *to love.*

SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

PRESENT	PAST	PERFECT	PAST PERFECT
	SINGULAR		
amer	amārer	amātus sim	amātus essem
amēris *or* amēre	amārēris *or* amārēre	amātus sīs	amātus essēs
amētur	amārētur	amātus sit	amātus esset
	PLURAL		
amēmur	amārēmur	amātī sīmus	amātī essēmus
amēminī	amārēminī	amātī sītis	amātī essētis
amentur	amārentur	amātī sint	amātī essent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

	SINGULAR	PLURAL
SECOND PERSON:	amāre, *be (thou) loved.*	amāminī, *be (ye) loved.*

INFINITIVE

PRESENT PASSIVE: amārī, *to be loved.*
PERFECT PASSIVE: amātus esse, *to have been loved.*
FUTURE PASSIVE: amātum īrī, *to be about to be loved.*

PARTICIPLES

PERFECT PASSIVE: amātus, *having been loved, loved.*
GERUNDIVE: amandus, *to be loved.*

490. Four Regular Conjugations

FIRST: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum,** *love*
SECOND: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum,** *advise*
THIRD: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum,** *guide*
FOURTH: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum,** *hear*

Present Indicative Active

amō	moneō	regō	audiō
amās	monēs	regis	audīs
amat	monet	regit	audit
amāmus	monēmus	regimus	audīmus
amātis	monētis	regitis	audītis
amant	monent	regunt	audiunt

Past Indicative Active

amābam	monēbam	regēbam	audiēbam
amābās	monēbās	regēbās	audiēbās
amābat	monēbat	regēbat	audiēbat
amābāmus	monēbāmus	regēbāmus	audiēbāmus
amābātis	monēbātis	regēbātis	audiēbātis
amābant	monēbant	regēbant	audiēbant

Future Indicative Active

amābō	monēbō	regam	audiam
amābis	monēbis	regēs	audiēs
amābit	monēbit	reget	audiet
amābimus	monēbimus	regēmus	audiēmus
amābitis	monēbitis	regētis	audiētis
amābunt	monēbunt	regent	audient

Four Regular Conjugations

FIRST: **amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum,** *love*
SECOND: **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum,** *advise*
THIRD: **regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum,** *guide*
FOURTH: **audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum,** *hear*

Present Indicative Passive

amor	moneor	regor	audior
amāris (-re)	monēris (-re)	regeris (-re)	audīris (-re)
amātur	monētur	regitur	audītur
amāmur	monēmur	regimur	audīmur
amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī
amantur	monentur	reguntur	audiuntur

Past Indicative Passive

amābar	monēbar	regēbar	audiēbar
amābāris (-re)	monēbāris (-re)	regēbāris (-re)	audiēbāris (-re)
amābātur	monēbātur	regēbātur	audiēbātur
amābāmur	monēbāmur	regēbāmur	audiēbāmur
amābāminī	monēbāminī	regēbāminī	audiēbāminī
amābantur	monēbantur	regēbantur	audiēbantur

Future Indicative Passive

amābor	monēbor	regar	audiar
amāberis (-re)	monēberis (-re)	regēris (-re)	audiēris (-re)
amābitur	monēbitur	regētur	audiētur
amābimur	monēbimur	regēmur	audiēmur
amābiminī	monēbiminī	regēminī	audiēminī
amābuntur	monēbuntur	regentur	audientur

Perfect Indicative Active

amāvī	monuī	rēxī	audīvī
amāvistī	monuistī	rēxistī	audīvistī
amāvit	monuit	rēxit	audīvit
amāvimus	monuimus	rēximus	audīvimus
amāvistis	monuistis	rēxistis	audīvistis
amāvērunt (-ēre)	monuērunt (-ēre)	rēxērunt (-ēre)	audīvērunt (-ēre)

Past Perfect Indicative Active

amāveram	monueram	rēxeram	audīveram
amāverās	monuerās	rēxerās	audīverās
amāverat	monuerat	rēxerat	audīverat
amāverāmus	monuerāmus	rēxerāmus	audīverāmus
amāverātis	monuerātis	rēxerātis	audīverātis
amāverant	monuerant	rēxerant	audīverant

Future Perfect Indicative Active

amāverō	monuerō	rēxerō	audīverō
amāveris	monueris	rēxeris	audīveris
amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
amāverimus	monuerimus	rēxerimus	audīverimus
amāveritis	monueritis	rēxeritis	audīveritis
amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

Present Subjunctive Active

amem	moneam	regam	audiam
amēs	moneās	regās	audiās
amet	moneat	regat	audiat
amēmus	moneāmus	regāmus	audiāmus
amētis	moneātis	regātis	audiātis
ament	moneant	regant	audiant

Past Subjunctive Active

amārem	monērem	regerem	audīrem
amārēs	monērēs	regerēs	audīrēs
amāret	monēret	regeret	audīret
amārēmus	monērēmus	regerēmus	audīrēmus
amārētis	monērētis	regerētis	audīrētis
amārent	monērent	regerent	audīrent

Perfect Indicative Passive

amātus **sum**	monitus **sum**	rēctus **sum**	audītus **sum**
amātus **es**	monitus **es**	rēctus **es**	audītus **es**
amātus **est**	monitus **est**	rēctus **est**	audītus **est**
amātī **sumus**	monitī **sumus**	rēctī **sumus**	audītī **sumus**
amātī **estis**	monitī **estis**	rēctī **estis**	audītī **estis**
amātī **sunt**	monitī **sunt**	rēctī **sunt**	audītī **sunt**

Past Perfect Indicative Passive

amātus **eram**	monitus **eram**	rēctus **eram**	audītus **eram**
amātus **erās**	monitus **erās**	rēctus **erās**	audītus **erās**
amātus **erat**	monitus **erat**	rēctus **erat**	audītus **erat**
amātī **erāmus**	monitī **erāmus**	rēctī **erāmus**	audītī **erāmus**
amātī **erātis**	monitī **erātis**	rēctī **erātis**	audītī **erātis**
amātī **erant**	monitī **erant**	rēctī **erant**	audītī **erant**

Future Perfect Indicative Passive

amātus **erō**	monitus **erō**	rēctus **erō**	audītus **erō**
amātus **eris**	monitus **eris**	rēctus **eris**	audītus **eris**
amātus **erit**	monitus **erit**	rēctus **erit**	audītus **erit**
amātī **erimus**	monitī **erimus**	rēctī **erimus**	audītī **erimus**
amātī **eritis**	monitī **eritis**	rēctī **eritis**	audītī **eritis**
amātī **erunt**	monitī **erunt**	rēctī **erunt**	audītī **erunt**

Present Subjunctive Passive

amer	**monear**	**regar**	**audiar**
amēris (-re)	**moneāris (-re)**	**regāris (-re)**	**audiāris (-re)**
amētur	**moneātur**	**regātur**	**audiātur**
amēmur	**moneāmur**	**regāmur**	**audiāmur**
amēminī	**moneāminī**	**regāminī**	**audiāminī**
amentur	**moneantur**	**regantur**	**audiantur**

Past Subjunctive Passive

amārer	**monērer**	**regerer**	**audīrer**
amārēris (-re)	**monērēris (-re)**	**regerēris (-re)**	**audīrēris (-re)**
amārētur	**monērētur**	**regerētur**	**audīrētur**
amārēmur	**monērēmur**	**regerēmur**	**audīrēmur**
amārēminī	**monērēminī**	**regerēminī**	**audīrēminī**
amārentur	**monērentur**	**regerentur**	**audīrentur**

Perfect Subjunctive Active

amāverim	monuerim	rēxerim	audīverim
amāverīs	monuerīs	rēxerīs	audīverīs
amāverit	monuerit	rēxerit	audīverit
amāverīmus	monuerīmus	rēxerīmus	audīverīmus
amāverītis	monuerītis	rēxerītis	audīverītis
amāverint	monuerint	rēxerint	audīverint

Past Perfect Subjunctive Active

amāvissem	monuissem	rēxissem	audīvissem
amāvissēs	monuissēs	rēxissēs	audīvissēs
amāvisset	monuisset	rēxisset	audīvisset
amāvissēmus	monuissēmus	rēxissēmus	audīvissēmus
amāvissētis	monuissētis	rēxissētis	audīvissētis
amāvissent	monuissent	rēxissent	audīvissent

Present Imperative Active

SING.	amā	monē	rege	audī
PL.	amāte	monēte	regite	audīte

Infinitive

PRES. ACT.	amāre	monēre	regere	audīre
PERF. ACT.	amāvisse	monuisse	rēxisse	audīvisse
FUT. ACT.	amātūrus esse	monitūrus esse	rēctūrus esse	audītūrus esse

Participles

PRES. ACT.	amāns	monēns	regēns	audiēns
FUT. ACT.	amātūrus	monitūrus	rēctūrus	audītūrus

Gerund

GEN.	amandī	monendī	regendī	audiendī
DAT.	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō
ACC.	amandum	monendum	regendum	audiendum
ABL.	amandō	monendō	regendō	audiendō

Supine

ACC.	amātum	monitum	rēctum	audītum
ABL.	amātū	monitū	rēctū	audītū

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amātus **sim**	monitus **sim**	rēctus **sim**	audītus **sim**
amātus **sīs**	monitus **sīs**	rēctus **sīs**	audītus **sīs**
amātus **sit**	monitus **sit**	rēctus **sit**	audītus **sit**
amātī **sīmus**	monitī **sīmus**	rēctī **sīmus**	audītī **sīmus**
amātī **sītis**	monitī **sītis**	rēctī **sītis**	audītī **sītis**
amātī **sint**	monitī **sint**	rēctī **sint**	audītī **sint**

PAST PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE

amātus **essem**	monitus **essem**	rēctus **essem**	audītus **essem**
amātus **essēs**	monitus **essēs**	rēctus **essēs**	audītus **essēs**
amātus **esset**	monitus **esset**	rēctus **esset**	audītus **esset**
amātī **essēmus**	monitī **essēmus**	rēctī **essēmus**	audītī **essēmus**
amātī **essētis**	monitī **essētis**	rēctī **essētis**	audītī **essētis**
amātī **essent**	monitī **essent**	rēctī **essent**	audītī **essent**

PRESENT IMPERATIVE PASSIVE

SING.	amāre	monēre	regere	audīre
PL.	amāminī	monēminī	regiminī	audīminī

INFINITIVE

PRES. PASS.	amārī	monērī	regī	audīrī
PERF. PASS.	amātus **esse**	monitus **esse**	rēctus **esse**	audītus **esse**
FUT. PASS.	amātum **īrī**	monitum **īrī**	rēctum **īrī**	audītum **īrī**

PARTICIPLES

PERF. PASS.	amātus	monitus	rēctus	audītus
GERUNDIVE	amandus	monendus	regendus	audiendus

491. Third Conjugation: Verbs in *iō*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		PRESENT	
capiō	capiam	capior	capiar
capis	capiās	caperis (-re)	capiāris (-re)
capit	capiat	capitur	capiātur
capimus	capiāmus	capimur	capiāmur
capitis	capiātis	capiminī	capiāminī
capiunt	capiant	capiuntur	capiantur
		PAST	
capiēbam	caperem	capiēbar	caperer
capiēbās	caperēs	capiēbāris (-re)	caperēris (-re)
capiēbat	caperet	capiēbātur	caperētur
capiēbāmus	caperēmus	capiēbāmur	caperēmur
capiēbātis	caperētis	capiēbāminī	caperēminī
capiēbant	caperent	capiēbantur	caperentur
		FUTURE	
capiam		capiar	
capiēs		capiēris (-re)	
capiet		capiētur	
capiēmus		capiēmur	
capiētis		capiēminī	
capient		capientur	
		PERFECT	
cēpī	cēperim	captus sum	captus sim
cēpistī	cēperīs	captus es	captus sīs
cēpit	cēperit	captus est	captus sit
cēpimus	cēperīmus	captī sumus	captī sīmus
cēpistis	cēperītis	captī estis	captī sītis
cēpērunt (-ēre)	cēperint	captī sunt	captī sint

PAST PERFECT

cēperam	cēpissem	captus eram	captus essem
cēperās	cēpissēs	captus erās	captus essēs
cēperat	cēpisset	captus erat	captus esset
cēperāmus	cēpissēmus	captī erāmus	captī essēmus
cēperātis	cēpissētis	captī erātis	captī essētis
cēperant	cēpissent	captī erant	captī essent

FUTURE PERFECT

cēperō	captus erō
cēperis	captus eris
cēperit	captus erit
cēperimus	captī erimus
cēperitis	captī eritis
cēperint	captī erunt

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING.	cape	PL.	capite	SING.	capere	PL.	capiminī

INFINITIVE

PRES.	capere	capī
PERF.	cēpisse	captus esse
FUT.	captūrus esse	captum īrī

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	capiēns	PERF.	captus
FUT.	captūrus	GERUNDIVE	capiendus

	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	capiendī	
DAT.	capiendō	
ACC.	capiendum	captum
ABL.	capiendō	captū

492. Deponent Verbs

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
cōnor, *I try, am trying, do try.*	cōner
cōnāris (-re), *you try, are trying, do try.*	cōnēris (-re)
cōnātur, *he tries, is trying, does try.*	cōnētur
cōnāmur, *we try, are trying, do try.*	cōnēmur
cōnāminī, *you try, are trying, do try.*	cōnēminī
cōnantur, *they try, are trying, do try.*	cōnentur
PAST	
cōnābar, *I was trying, tried, did try.*	cōnārer
cōnābāris (-re), *you were trying, tried, did try.*	cōnārēris (-re)
cōnābātur, *he was trying, tried, did try.*	cōnārētur
cōnābāmur, *we were trying, tried, did try.*	cōnārēmur
cōnābāminī, *you were trying, tried, did try.*	cōnārēminī
cōnābantur, *they were trying, tried, did try.*	cōnārentur
FUTURE	
cōnābor, *I shall try.*	
cōnāberis (-re), *you will try.*	
cōnābitur, *he will try.*	
cōnābimur, *we shall try.*	
cōnābiminī, *you will try.*	
cōnābuntur, *they will try.*	
PERFECT	
cōnātus sum, *I have tried, tried, did try.*	cōnātus sim
cōnātus es, *you have tried, tried, did try.*	cōnātus sīs
cōnātus est, *he has tried, tried, did try.*	cōnātus sit
cōnātī sumus, *we have tried, tried, did try.*	cōnātī sīmus
cōnātī estis, *you have tried, tried, did try.*	cōnātī sītis
cōnātī sunt, *they have tried, tried, did try.*	cōnātī sint

PAST PERFECT

cōnātus **eram**, *I had tried.*	cōnātus **essem**
cōnātus **erās**, *you had tried.*	cōnātus **essēs**
cōnātus **erat**, *he had tried.*	cōnātus **esset**
cōnātī **erāmus**, *we had tried.*	cōnātī **essēmus**
cōnātī **erātis**, *you had tried.*	cōnātī **essētis**
cōnātī **erant**, *they had tried.*	cōnātī **essent**

FUTURE PERFECT

cōnātus **erō**, *I shall have tried.*
cōnātus **eris**, *you will have tried.*
cōnātus **erit**, *he will have tried.*

cōnātī **erimus**, *we shall have tried.*
cōnātī **eritis**, *you will have tried.*
cōnātī **erunt**, *they will have tried.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. cōnāre, *try (thou).* PL. cōnāminī, *try (ye).*

INFINITIVE

PRES. cōnārī, *to try.*
PERF. cōnātus **esse**, *to have tried.*
FUT. cōnātūrus **esse**, *to be about to try.*

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	cōnāns, *trying.*	PERF.	cōnātus, *having tried.*
FUT.	cōnātūrus, *about to try.*	GERUNDIVE	cōnandus, *to be tried.*

	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	cōnandī, *of trying.*	
DAT.	cōnandō, *for trying.*	
ACC.	cōnandum, *trying.*	cōnātum, *to try.*
ABL.	cōnandō, *by trying.*	cōnātū, *to try.*

493. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *sum*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
sum, *I am.*	sim
es, *you are.*	sīs
est, *he is.*	sit
sumus, *we are.*	sīmus
estis, *you are.*	sītis
sunt, *they are.*	sint
PAST	
eram, *I was.*	essem
erās, *you were.*	essēs
erat, *he was.*	esset
erāmus, *we were.*	essēmus
erātis, *you were.*	essētis
erant, *they were.*	essent
FUTURE	
erō, *I shall be.*	
eris, *you will be.*	
erit, *he will be.*	
erimus, *we shall be.*	
eritis, *you will be.*	
erunt, *they will be.*	
PERFECT	
fuī, *I have been, was.*	fuerim
fuistī, *you have been, were.*	fuerīs
fuit, *he has been, was.*	fuerit
fuimus, *we have been, were.*	fuerīmus
fuistis, *you have been, were.*	fuerītis
fuērunt (-ēre), *they have been, were.*	fuerint

PAST PERFECT

fueram, *I had been.*	**fuissem**
fuerās, *you had been.*	**fuissēs**
fuerat, *he had been.*	**fuisset**
fuerāmus, *we had been.*	**fuissēmus**
fuerātis, *you had been.*	**fuissētis**
fuerant, *they had been.*	**fuissent**

FUTURE PERFECT

fuerō, *I shall have been.*
fueris, *you will have been.*
fuerit, *he will have been.*

fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
fueritis, *you will have been.*
fuerint, *they will have been.*

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. es, *be* (*thou*). PL. este, *be* (*ye*).

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLE
PRES.	esse, *to be.*	
PERF.	**fuisse**, *to have been.*	
FUT.	**futūrus esse** *or* fore, *to be about to be.*	**futūrus**, *about to be.*

494. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *possum*

possum, posse, potuī, *be able*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
possum	possim
potes	possīs
potest	possit
possumus	possīmus
potestis	possītis
possunt	possint

PAST	
poteram	possem
poterās	possēs
poterat	posset
poterāmus	possēmus
poterātis	possētis
poterant	possent

FUTURE
poterō
poteris
poterit
poterimus
poteritis
poterunt

PERFECT	
potuī	potuerim
potuistī	potueris
potuit	potuerit
potuimus	potuerīmus
potuistis	potuerītis
potuērunt (-ēre)	potuerint

PAST PERFECT	
potueram	potuissem
potuerās	potuissēs
potuerat	potuisset
potuerāmus	potuissēmus
potuerātis	potuissētis
potuerant	potuissent

FUTURE PERFECT
potuerō
potueris
potuerit
potuerimus
potueritis
potuerint

INFINITIVE

PRES.	posse	PERF.	potuisse

495. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *prōsum*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, *benefit*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
prōsum	prōsim
prōdes	prōsīs
prōdest	prōsit
prōsumus	prōsīmus
prōdestis	prōsītis
prōsunt	prōsint
PAST	
prōderam	prōdessem
prōderās	prōdessēs
prōderat	prōdesset
prōderāmus	prōdessēmus
prōderātis	prōdessētis
prōderant	prōdessent
FUTURE	
prōderō	
prōderis	
prōderit	
prōderimus	
prōderitis	
prōderunt	
PERFECT	
prōfuī	prōfuerim
prōfuistī	prōfuerīs
prōfuit	prōfuerit
prōfuimus	prōfuerīmus
prōfuistis	prōfuerītis
prōfuērunt (-ēre)	prōfuerint

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

velim	nōlim	mālim
velīs	nōlīs	mālīs
velit	nōlit	mālit
velīmus	nōlīmus	mālīmus
velītis	nōlītis	mālītis
velint	nōlint	mālint

PAST

vellem	nōllem	māllem
vellēs	nōllēs	māllēs
vellet	nōllet	māllet
vellēmus	nōllēmus	māllēmus
vellētis	nōllētis	māllētis
vellent	nōllent	māllent

PERFECT

voluerim	nōluerim	māluerim
voluerīs	nōluerīs	māluerīs
voluerit	nōluerit	māluerit
voluerīmus	nōluerīmus	māluerīmus
voluerītis	nōluerītis	māluerītis
voluerint	nōluerint	māluerint

PAST PERFECT

voluissem	nōluissem	māluissem
voluissēs	nōluissēs	māluissēs
voluisset	nōluisset	māluisset
voluissēmus	nōluissēmus	māluissēmus
voluissētis	nōluissētis	māluissētis
voluissent	nōluissent	māluissent

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING. nōlī PL. nōlīte

INFINITIVE

PRES	velle	nōlle	mālle
PERF.	voluisse	nōluisse	māluisse

PARTICIPLE

PRES.	volēns	nōlēns

497. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *ferō*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, *bear*

ACTIVE		PASSIVE	
INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE	INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
		PRESENT	
ferō	feram	feror	ferar
fers	ferās	ferris (-re)	ferāris (-re)
fert	ferat	fertur	ferātur
ferimus	ferāmus	ferimur	ferāmur
fertis	ferātis	feriminī	ferāminī
ferunt	ferant	feruntur	ferantur
		PAST	
ferēbam	ferrem	ferēbar	ferrer
ferēbās	ferrēs	ferēbāris (-re)	ferrēris (-re)
ferēbat	ferret	ferēbātur	ferrētur
ferēbāmus	ferrēmus	ferēbāmur	ferrēmur
ferēbātis	ferrētis	ferēbāminī	ferrēminī
ferēbant	ferrent	ferēbantur	ferrentur
		FUTURE	
feram		ferar	
ferēs		ferēris (-re)	
feret		ferētur	
ferēmus		ferēmur	
ferētis		ferēminī	
ferent		ferentur	
		PERFECT	
tulī	tulerim	lātus sum	lātus sim
tulistī	tulerīs	lātus es	lātus sīs
tulit	tulerit	lātus est	lātus sit
tulimus	tulerīmus	lātī sumus	lātī sīmus
tulistis	tulerītis	lātī estis	lātī sītis
tulērunt (-ēre)	tulerint	lātī sunt	lātī sint

PAST PERFECT

tuleram	**tulissem**	**lātus eram**	**lātus essem**
tulerās	**tulissēs**	**lātus erās**	**lātus essēs**
tulerat	**tulisset**	**lātus erat**	**lātus esset**
tulerāmus	**tulissēmus**	**lātī erāmus**	**lātī essēmus**
tulerātis	**tulissētis**	**lātī erātis**	**lātī essētis**
tulerant	**tulissent**	**lātī erant**	**lātī essent**

FUTURE PERFECT

tulerō	**lātus erō**
tuleris	**lātus eris**
tulerit	**lātus erit**
tulerimus	**lātī erimus**
tuleritis	**lātī eritis**
tulerint	**lātī erunt**

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING.	**fer**	PL. **ferte**	SING.	**ferre**	PL. **ferimini**

INFINITIVE

PRES.	**ferre**	**ferrī**
PERF.	**tulisse**	**lātus esse**
FUT.	**lātūrus esse**	**lātum īrī**

PARTICIPLES

PRES.	**ferēns**	PERF.	**lātus**
FUT.	**lātūrus**	GERUNDIVE	**ferendus**

	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	**ferendī**	
DAT.	**ferendō**	
ACC.	**ferendum**	**lātum**
ABL.	**ferendō**	**lātū**

498. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *eō*

eō, īre, iī, itum, *go*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
eō	eam
īs	eās
it	eat
īmus	eāmus
ītis	eātis
eunt	eant
PAST	
ībam	**īrem**
ībās	**īrēs**
ībat	**īret**
ībāmus	**īrēmus**
ībātis	**īrētis**
ībant	**īrent**
FUTURE	
ībō	
ībis	
ībit	
ībimus	
ībitis	
ībunt	
PERFECT	
iī	**ierim**
īstī	**ierīs**
iit	**ierit**
iimus	**ierīmus**
īstis	**ierītis**
iērunt (-ēre)	**ierint**

	PAST PERFECT
ieram	īssem
ierās	īssēs
ierat	īsset
ierāmus	īssēmus
ierātis	īssētis
ierant	īssent

	FUTURE PERFECT
ierō	
ieris	
ierit	
ierimus	
ieritis	
ierint	

PRESENT IMPERATIVE

SING.	ī	PL.	**īte**

	INFINITIVE	PARTICIPLES
PRES.	**īre**	**iēns** (*genitive*, euntis)
PERF.	īsse	
FUT.	**itūrus esse**	**itūrus**

	GERUND	SUPINE
GEN.	eundī	
DAT.	eundō	
ACC.	eundum	**itum**
ABL.	eundō	**itū**

499. Conjugation of the Irregular Verb *fīō*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, *be done*

INDICATIVE	SUBJUNCTIVE
PRESENT	
fīō	fīam
fīs	fīās
fit	fīat
fīmus	fīāmus
fītis	fīātis
fīunt	fīant

PAST	
fīēbam	fierem
fīēbās	fierēs
fīēbat	fieret
fīēbāmus	fierēmus
fīēbātis	fierētis
fīēbant	fierent

FUTURE
fīam
fīēs
fīet
fīēmus
fīētis
fīent

PERFECT	
factus **sum**	factus **sim**
factus **es**	factus **sīs**
factus **est**	factus **sit**
factī **sumus**	factī **sīmus**
factī **estis**	factī **sītis**
factī **sunt**	factī **sint**

PAST PERFECT	
factus **eram**	factus **essem**
factus **erās**	factus **essēs**
factus **erat**	factus **esset**
factī **erāmus**	factī **essēmus**
factī **erātis**	factī **essētis**
factī **erant**	factī **essent**

FUTURE PERFECT
factus **erō**
factus **eris**
factus **erit**
factī **erimus**
factī **eritis**
factī **erunt**

	INFINITIVE		PARTICIPLES
PRES.	fierī		
PERF.	factus **esse**		factus
FUT.	factum **īrī**	GERUNDIVE	faciendus

RULES OF SYNTAX

(The numbers following the rules refer to the sections in which the constructions are explained.)

500. Agreement of Verb. — A verb agrees with its subject in person and number. (16).

501. Agreement of Noun. — An appositive or predicate noun agrees in case with the noun to which it belongs. (72).

502. Agreement of Adjective. — An adjective agrees in gender, number, and case with the noun it modifies. (80).

503. Agreement of Relative Pronoun. — The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender and number, but its case depends upon the construction in which it is used. (143).

504. Subject. — The subject is in the nominative. (31).

505. Descriptive Genitive. — The genitive of a noun and adjective is used to describe a person or thing. (111).

506. Indirect Object. — The indirect object of a transitive verb is in the dative. (57).

507. Dative with Intransitive Verbs. — Certain intransitive verbs[1] govern the dative. (224).

508. Dative with Compound Verbs. — Certain compound verbs[2] govern the dative. (241).

509. Dative with Adjectives. — Certain adjectives[3] take the dative. (89).

510. Dative of Purpose or Tendency. — The dative is used to express purpose and tendency. (301).

---

[1] In this book are given **cōnsulō, fīdō, imperō, noceō, persuādeō, resistō, studeō.**

[2] In this book are given **īnferō, occurrō, praecipiō, praeficiō, praestō, prōsum, succēdō.**

[3] In this book are given **amīcus, idōneus, propinquus, propior, proximus, similis, dissimilis.**

511. Double Dative Construction. — The dative of purpose or tendency is often accompanied by another dative denoting the person concerned. (302).

512. Dative of Possession. — The dative is used with **sum** to express possession. (421).

513. Dative of Agent. — The dative is used with the passive periphrastic conjugation to denote the agent. (430).

514. Direct Object. — The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (32).

515. Accusative of Extent or Duration. — The accusative is used to express extent of space and duration of time. (339).

516. Ablative of Separation. — Verbs of separation[1] take the ablative with **ab**, **dē**, or **ex**, or without a preposition. (133).

517. Ablative of Agent. — The ablative with **ab** is used with a passive verb to denote the person by whom a thing is done.. (41).

518. Ablative of Means. — The ablative is used to express the means. (64).

519. Ablative of Accompaniment. — The ablative with **cum** is used to express accompaniment. (97).

520. Ablative of Manner. — The ablative with **cum** is used to express manner, but **cum** may be omitted when an adjective modifies the noun. (321).

521. Ablative of Cause or Reason. — The ablative is used to express cause and reason. (106).

522. Ablative of Comparison. — A comparative without **quam** takes the ablative; but when **quam** is used, the words denoting the things compared are in the same case. (309).

523. Ablative of Measure of Difference. — The ablative is used to express the measure of difference. (315).

---

[1] Of the verbs of separation given in this book, **careō** and **līberō** regularly take the ablative without a preposition.

524. Descriptive Ablative. — The ablative of a noun and adjective is used to describe a person or thing. (111).

525. Ablative of Respect. — The ablative is used to specify the respect in which another word applies. (175).

526. Ablative of Time. — The ablative is used to express the time at which or within which a thing is done. (344).

527. Ablative with Certain Deponents. — The deponents **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor,** govern the ablative. (385).

528. Ablative Absolute. — The ablative of a noun or pronoun and a predicate participle, noun, or adjective is used to express time, cause, opposition, condition, or other circumstance. (394).

529. Place Where. — The ablative with **in** or **sub** is used to express the place where; but names of towns, **domus,** and **rūs** have a locative case to express this idea. (250, 253).

530. Place to Which. — The accusative with **ad, in,** or **sub** is used to express the place to which; but a preposition is not used before names of towns, **domus,** and **rūs.** (254).

531. Place from Which. — The ablative with **ab, dē,** or **ex** is used to express the place from which; but a preposition is not used before names of towns, **domus,** and **rūs.** (255).

532. Present Indicative with *dum*. — The present indicative is used with **dum,** *while.* (163).

533. Perfect Indicative with *postquam* and *ubi*. — The perfect indicative is used with **postquam** and **ubi** in clauses expressing time. (169).

534. Clauses of Purpose. — The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **nē** in clauses expressing purpose. (261).

535. Relative Clauses of Purpose. — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses expressing purpose. (267).

536. *Quō*-Clauses of Purpose. — Clauses of purpose in which there is a comparative are usually introduced by **quō,** instead of **ut.** (412).

537. Substantive Clauses of Volition. — The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **nē** in substantive clauses expressing what is wanted.[1] (268).

538. Clauses of Result. — The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **ut nōn** in clauses expressing result. (280).

539. Relative Clauses of Result. — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses expressing result. (281).

540. Substantive Clauses of Result. — The subjunctive is used with **ut** and **ut nōn** in clauses which are subject or object of a verb expressing accomplishment or subject of a verb expressing occurrence.[2] (286).

541. Descriptive Relative Clauses. — The subjunctive is used in relative clauses describing the person or thing denoted by an indefinite antecedent. (292).

542. *Cum*-Clauses of Situation. — The past and past perfect subjunctive are used with **cum** in clauses describing the situation. (407).

543. Causal and Adversative *cum*-Clauses. — The subjunctive is used with **cum** in clauses expressing cause and opposition. (402).

544. Indirect Statements. — The infinitive, with an accusative as subject, is used in indirect statements. (368).

545. Indirect Subordinate Clauses. — The subjunctive is used in indirect subordinate clauses. (390).

546. Indirect Questions. — The subjunctive is used in indirect questions. (327).

547. Harmony of Tenses. — The present or perfect subjunctive is used in the subordinate clause when the principal verb represents a present or future action, the past or past perfect when the principal verb represents a past action. The present and past subjunctive represent an action at or after the time of the principal verb; the

---

[1] **Cohortor, imperō, moneō, persuādeō, petō, postulō,** and **praecipiō** are given in this book with substantive clauses of volition.

[2] **Faciō, efficiō, fīō,** and **accidō** are given in this book with substantive clauses of result.

perfect and past perfect represent an action before the time of the principal verb. (333).

548. Use of Infinitive Tenses. — The present infinitive represents an action at the time of the verb on which it depends. The perfect infinitive represents an action before the time of the verb on which it depends. The future infinitive represents an action after the time of the verb on which it depends. (374).

549. Use of Supine in *um*. — The supine in **um** is used with verbs of motion to express purpose. (440).

550. Present and Past Neutral Conditional Complexes. — The present, past, perfect, and past perfect indicative are used in conditional complexes which imply neither the occurrence nor the non-occurrence of the action. (454, 455).

551. More Vivid Future Conditional Complexes. — The future and future perfect indicative are used in more vivid future conditional complexes. (450, 455).

552. Less Vivid Future Conditional Complexes. — The present and perfect subjunctive are used in less vivid future conditional complexes. (450, 455).

553. Conditional Complexes Contrary to Fact. — The past and past perfect subjunctive are used in conditional complexes which imply the non-occurrence of the action. The past is used to imply the non-occurrence of an action in present time, the past perfect to imply the non-occurrence of an action in past time. (454, 455).

POSITION OF WORDS

554. Emphasis. — The position of words in a Latin sentence is largely determined by emphasis.

555. Subject and Verb. — The subject normally stands first in the sentence and the verb last.

556. Objects. — The indirect object normally stands before the direct object.

557. Vocative. — The vocative normally follows one or more words.

558. Adjective. — An adjective may either precede or follow the noun it modifies. A possessive adjective normally follows the noun it modifies.

559. Adverb. — An adverb normally stands just before the word it modifies.

560. Genitive. — A genitive normally follows the noun it modifies.

561. Adjective and Genitive. — When an adjective and a genitive modify the same noun, the order is often adjective, genitive, modified noun.

562. Adjective and Monosyllabic Preposition. — When a monosyllabic preposition is used with a noun modified by an adjective, the preposition often stands between the adjective and the noun.

563. *-que.* — The enclitic **-que** is joined to the word it adds; if it adds a phrase or clause, it is usually joined to the first word of that phrase or clause.

564. *-ne.* — The enclitic **-ne** is usually joined to the first word in the question.

565. Enclitic *-cum.* — When the preposition **cum** is used with a personal, reflexive, or relative pronoun, it follows and is joined to the pronoun.

566. Particular Words. — The words **populus Rōmānus** and **dī immortālēs** regularly stand in this order. **Autem** and **enim** cannot stand first in a sentence or clause, but are usually second. **Quoque** regularly follows the word it modifies. **Ferē** usually follows the word it modifies. **Quidem** follows the word it emphasizes. **Inquit** follows one or more words of the quotation. **Causā** follows the genitive.

LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to the sections in which the inflection of the words is shown, but no reference is given where the inflection is regular. The etymologies given in this vocabulary show from what the word is derived — not, as in the vocabularies of the lessons, any related word.

A

ab or **ā**, prep. with abl., *away from, from; by; in, on.*

abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum, *hide, conceal.* [ab + dō].

absēns, absentis, 324 (note), *absent.* [absum].

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, 493, *be away, be absent, be distant.* [ab + sum].

-ac, see **atque.**

accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum, *come to, approach.*

accidō, accidere, accidī, *happen.*

accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum, *receive.* [ad + capiō].

ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp; active.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., *line of battle.*

ācriter, adv., *sharply, fiercely.* [ācer].

ad, prep. with acc., *to; near, at.*

addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum, *lead to, bring; induce.* [ad + dūcō].

adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectum, *visit, afflict.* [ad + faciō].

aditus, -ūs, m., *approach, access.*

adiungō, adiungere, adiūnxī, adiūnctum, *join to, join, add.*

adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum, *attack.*

adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m., *young man, youth.*

adventus, -ūs, m., *arrival.*

adversārius, -ī, m., *opponent, adversary.*

aedificium, -ī, n., *building.* [aedificō].

aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum, *build.*

aequus, -a, -um, *level, fair, favorable.*

ager, agrī, m., *field, territory.*

agger, aggeris, m., *agger,* a mound used in military operations.

agmen, agminis, m., *column* (of a marching army); **novissimum agmen,** *rear.* [agō].

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, *drive; treat.*

aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod), 487, *some, some one, something.*

alius, alia, aliud, 465, *other, another;* **aliī . . . aliī,** *some . . . others.*

Allia, -ae, f., *the Allia,* a river near Rome.

Allobrogēs, -um, m. pl., *the Allobroges.*

Alpēs, -ium, f. pl., *the Alps*.
alter, altera, alterum, 465, *the other*; **alter . . . alter**, *one . . . the other*; **alterī . . . alterī**, *one party . . . the other party*.
altitūdō, altitūdinis, f., *height, depth*. [altus].
altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*.
amīcitia, -ae, f., *friendship*. [amicus].
amīcus, -a, -um, *friendly*; **amīcus**, -ī, m., *friend*. [amō].
amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum, *love*.
angustiae, -ārum, f. pl., *pass, defile*. [angustus].
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow*.
animal, animālis, n., *animal*.
animus, -ī, m., *mind*; *courage*.
annus, -ī, m., *year*.
ante, prep. with acc., *before*.
anteā, adv., *before, previously*. [ante + is].
aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum, *open*.
apertus, -a, -um, *open, unprotected*. [aperiō].
appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum, *call, name*.
Appennīnus, -ī, m., *the Apennines*, mountains of Italy.
appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum, *approach*.
apud, prep. with acc., *among, with*.
Āpūlia, -ae, f., *Apulia*, a division of Italy.
aqua, -ae, f., *water*.
Aquilēia, -ae, f., *Aquileia*, a town.
Aquītānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Aquitani, the Aquitanians*.
āra, -ae, f., *altar*.
Arar, Araris, m., *the Arar*, now called *Saône*.
arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum, *think*.
arbor, arboris, f., *tree*.
arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms*.
armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum, *arm*. [arma].
ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum, *climb, ascend*.
atque or **ac**, conj., *and*.
auctōritās, auctōritātis, f., *influence, authority*.
audāx, audācis, *bold, daring*. [audeō].
audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 382, *dare*.
audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum, *hear*.
augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, *increase*.
aut, conj., *or*; **aut . . . aut**, *either . . . or*.
autem, conj., *however*.
auxilium, -ī, n., *aid*. [augeō].
āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum, *turn aside*. [ā + vertō].

B

barbarus, -ī, m., *barbarian*.
Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgæ, the Belgians*.
bellum, -ī, n., *war*.
bene, adv., 318, *well, successfully*. [bonus].
beneficium, -ī, n., *kindness*. [bene + faciō].

Bibracte, Bibractis, n., *Bibracte*, a town.

Bōiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Boii*.

bonus, -a, -um, 476, *good*.

brevis, breve, *short*.

C

C., the abbreviation for **Gāius**.

caedēs, caedis, f., *slaughter, carnage*.

Caesar, Caesaris, m., *Caesar*.

calamitās, calamitātis, f., *disaster*.

calcar, calcāris, n., *spur*.

Campānia, -ae, f., *Campania*, a division of Italy.

Cannae, -ārum, f. pl., *Cannae*, a village.

Cannēnsis, -e, *at Cannae, of Cannae*.

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, *take, capture*; **cōnsilium capere**, *form a plan*.

captīva, -ae, f., *captive, prisoner*. [capiō].

captīvus, -ī, m., *captive, prisoner*. [capiō].

Capua, -ae, f., *Capua*, a city of Campania.

carcer, carceris, m., *prison*.

careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus, *be cut off, be without, lack*.

castellum, -ī, n., *stronghold*.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl., *camp*.

causa, -ae, f., *cause, reason*; **causā**, with gen., *for the sake of, for the purpose of*.

celeriter, adv., *quickly*.

Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Celtae, the Celts*.

centum, indeclinable, *one hundred*.

centuriō, centuriōnis, m., *centurion*, a Roman military officer.

certus, -a, -um, *definite, certain*; **certiōrem facere**, *inform*.

cēterī, -ae, -a, pl. adj., *the other*.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Cimbri*.

circiter, adv., *about*.

circum, prep. with acc., *about*.

circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, 54 (note), *put around, surround*. [circum + dō].

circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventum, *come around, surround*. [circum + veniō].

citrā, prep. with acc., *on this side of*.

cīvīlis, cīvīle, *civil*. [cīvis].

cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., 192 (note), *citizen, fellow-citizen*.

cīvitās, cīvitātis, f., *state*. [cīvis].

clārus, -a, -um, *famous, glorious*.

classis, classis, f., *fleet*.

Clastidium, -ī, n., *Clastidium*, a town.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum, *shut, close*.

coepī, perf., *have begun, began*.

cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum, *consider; intend*.

cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum, *find out, learn*.

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum, *collect; compel*. [agō].

cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum, *encourage, urge*.

collēga, -ae, m., *colleague*.

collis, collis, m., *hill*.

committō, committere, commīsī, commissum, with **proelium**, *join battle, begin the battle*. [mittō].

commodē, adv., *conveniently, effectively.*

comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum, *prepare, procure.* [parō].

complūrēs, complūra, pl. adj., 330 (note), *several.* [plūs].

comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum, *seize, arrest.*

concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum, *yield, grant.*

conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum, *win over.*

condiciō, condiciōnis, f., *terms, condition.*

condō, condere, condidī, conditum, *found, build.* [dō].

cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum, 497, *bring together*; **sē cōnferre**, *betake oneself, go.* [ferō].

cōnfertus, -a, -um, *dense, in close order.*

cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum, *finish; exhaust.* [faciō].

cōnfīrmō, cōnfīrmāre, cōnfīrmāvī, cōnfīrmātum, *strengthen, establish.*

coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectum, *hurl.* [iaciō].

coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum, *join with, join, unite.*

conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum, *place.*

conloquium, -ī, n., *conference.*

cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum, *try.*

cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum, *follow up; overtake.* [sequor].

cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātum, *keep, observe.* [servō].

cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum, *settle; encamp.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n., *plan; discretion.*

cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī, *take a position; halt.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m., *sight.*

cōnspicor, cōnspicārī, cōnspicātus sum, *catch sight of, see.*

cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum, *station, fix, determine.* [statuō].

cōnsuēscō, cōnsuēscere, cōnsuēvī, cōnsuētum, *become accustomed*; perf., *have become accustomed, be accustomed.*

cōnsul, cōnsulis, m., *consul*, chief magistrate of Rome.

cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultum, with dat., *look out for, consult.*

cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptum, *consume, waste.* [sūmō].

contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum, *strive, contend; hasten.*

continēō, continēre, continuī, contentum, *hold, restrain.* [teneō].

contrā, prep. with acc., *against.*

conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum, *come together, assemble.* [veniō].

convertō, convertere, convertī, conversum, *turn about, reverse.* [vertō].

cōpia, -ae, f., *abundance*; pl., *forces, troops.* [ops].

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn*; *wing* (of an army).

corpus, corporis, n., *body.*

cottīdiē, adv., *daily*. [diēs].
crēber, crēbra, crēbrum, *frequent, numerous*.
creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum, *make, elect*.
cum, prep. with abl., *with*.
cum, conj., *when; since, as; although, though*.
cupiditās, cupiditātis, f., *desire*.
cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum, *desire, wish*.
cūra, -ae, f., *care*.

D

dē, prep. with abl., *down from, from; about, concerning*.
dea, -ae, f., *goddess*.
dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, *owe, ought*.
decem, indeclinable, *ten*.
decemvirī, -ōrum, m. pl., *decemvirs*, a board, or commission, of ten men. [decem + vir].
dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f., *surrender*.
dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum, *lead down, lead away, withdraw; bring*. [dē + dūcō].
dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum, *defend*.
deinde, adv., *then, next*.
dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum, *destroy*.
dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum, *choose, select*.
dēmigrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātum, *move away, remove*.
dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum, *point out, show*.

dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum, *desert*.
dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum, *cease, give up*.
dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum, *be hopeless, despair*. [dē + spērō].
dētrīmentum, -ī, n., *loss*.
deus, -ī, m., 463, *god*.
dexter, dextra, dextrum, *right*; dextra, -ae, f., *right hand*.
dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, *say, speak*.
dictātor, dictātōris, m., *dictator*.
diēs, -ēī, m., *day*.
difficilis, difficile, 475, *difficult*. [facilis].
dīligentia, -ae, f., *diligence, industry*.
dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum, *send about; send away, dismiss*. [mittō].
discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum, *go away, come off*.
dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum, *distribute, arrange*. [pōnō].
dissimilis, dissimile, 475, with dat., *unlike*. [similis].
diū, adv., 478, *long, a long time*.
dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum, *divide*.
dīvīnus, -a, -um, *divine, superhuman*.
dō, dare, dedī, datum, 54 (note), *give*.
dolor, dolōris, m., *pain, grief*.
domus, -ūs, f., 463, *home*.
dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum, *doubt, hesitate*.
ducentī, -ae, -a, pl., *two hundred*. [duo + centum].

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum, *lead.*
dum, conj., *while.*
Dumnorīx, Dumnorīgis, m., *Dumnorix.*
duo, duae, duo, 480, *two.*
duodecim, indeclinable, *twelve.* [duo + decem].
dux, ducis, m., *leader, commander.* [dūcō].

E

ē, see ex.
ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātum, *bring up, rear.*
ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum, *lead out, bring out.* [ē + dūcō].
efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, 497, *carry away.* [ex + ferō].
efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum, *bring about, accomplish, complete.* [ex + faciō].
effugiō, effugere, effūgī, *flee from, escape.* [ex + fugiō].
ego, meī, 481, *I.*
ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum, *go out, march out.*
ēgregius, -a, -um, *uncommon, remarkable.*
elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.*
enim, conj., *for.*
eō, adv., *to that place, thither.* [is].
eō, īre, iī, itum, 498, *go.*
Ēpīrus, -ī, f., *Epirus,* a division of Greece.
eques, equitis, m., *horseman;* pl., *cavalry.* [equus].
equitātus, -ūs, m., *cavalry.* [eques].
equus, -ī, m., *horse.*
ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum, *snatch away, take away; rescue.*
et, conj., *and;* et . . . et, *both . . . and.*
etiam, adv., *even, also.* [et + iam].
Etrūria, -ae, f., *Etruria,* a division of Italy.
ex or ē, prep. with abl., *out of, from.*
excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum, *go out, withdraw.*
exercitus, -ūs, m., *army.*
existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātum, *think.*
exitus, -ūs, m., *outlet, exit.*
expeditus, -a, -um, *unobstructed.*
expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum, *drive out, expel.* [ex + pellō].
explōrātor, explōrātōris, m., *scout.*
expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātum, *take by assault, capture.* [ex + pugnō].
exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum, *wait for, await.*
extrā, prep. with acc., *outside of.*
extrēmus, -a, -um, *outermost, last.*

F

facile, adv., *easily.* [facilis].
facilis, facile, 475, *easy.* [faciō].
faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, *do, make;* certiōrem facere, *inform;* impetum facere in, *charge upon;* iter facere, *march.*
fāma, -ae, f., *report, fame.*
fēmina, -ae, f., *woman.*
ferē, adv., *almost.*
ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 497, *bear, carry.*
fidēs, -eī, f., *trust, trustworthiness; pledge, protection.* [fīdō].

fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, 382, with dat., *trust*.
fīlia, -ae, f., *daughter*.
fīlius, -ī, m., *son*.
fīnis, fīnis, m., *end*; pl., *boundaries, territory*.
fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. pl., *neighbors*. [fīnis].
fīō, fierī, factus sum, 499, *be done, be made; result, happen*.
fīrmus, -a, -um, *strong*.
flūmen, flūminis, n., *river*.
fortis, forte, *brave*.
fortiter, adv., *bravely*. [fortis].
fortūna, -ae, f., *fortune*.
fossa, -ae, f., *ditch, trench*.
frāter, frātris, m., 206 (note), *brother*.
frūmentārius, -a, -um, *of grain*; rēs frūmentāria, *supply of grain*. [frūmentum].
frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain*. [fruor].
fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, with abl., *enjoy*.
fuga, -ae, f., *flight*.
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee*. [fuga].
fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum, *put to flight, rout*. [fuga].
fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, with abl., *perform*.

G

Gallī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Gauls*.
Gallia, -ae, f., *Gaul*, a country.
Gallicus, -a, -um, *Gallic*.
Garumna, -ae, m., *the Garumna*, now called *Garonne*.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 382, *be glad*.
Genava, -ae, f., *Geneva*.
gēns, gentis, f., *tribe*.
genus, generis, n., *race; kind*.
Germānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Germans*.
gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, *carry on, wage*; rēs gestae, *deeds, achievements*.
gladius, -ī, m., *sword*.
Graecī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Greeks*.
Graecia, -ae, f., *Greece*.
grātia, -ae, f., *favor, influence*.
gravis, grave, *heavy; important*.

H

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, *have*.
habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum, *dwell, live*. [habeō].
Hadrūmētum, -ī, n., *Hadrumetum*.
Haeduus, -ī, m., *a Haeduan, the Haeduan*; pl., *the Haedui, the Haeduans*.
Hamilcar, Hamilcaris, m., *Hamilcar*.
Hannibal, Hannibalis, m., *Hannibal*.
Hasdrubal, Hasdrubalis, m., *Hasdrubal*.
Helvētiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Helvetii, the Helvetians*.
hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl., *winter quarters*. [hiems].
hic, haec, hoc, 483, *this*.
hīc, adv., *here*. [hic].
hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum, *spend the winter, winter*. [hiems].
hiems, hiemis, f., *winter*.
Hispānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Spaniards*.
Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain*.
homō, hominis, m. and f., *human being, man*.

honor, honōris, m., *honor*.
hōra, -ae, f., *hour*.
hospitium, -ī, n., *hospitality*.
hostis, hostis, m., *enemy*.
hūc, adv., *to this place, hither*. [hic].
humilis, humile, 475, *low, humble*.

I

iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum, *throw*.
iam, adv., *already*; **nōn iam**, *no longer*.
ibi, adv., *in that place, there*.
īdem, eadem, idem, 483, *the same*. [is].
idōneus, -a, -um, *suitable*.
ignis, ignis, m., 388 (note), *fire*.
ille, illa, illud, 483, *that*.
immortālis, immortāle, *immortal*.
impedīmentum, -ī, n., *hindrance*; pl., *baggage*. [impediō].
impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum, *check, impede*. [in + pēs].
imperātor, imperātōris, m., *general*. [imperō].
imperium, -ī, *power, rule*. [imperō].
imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat., *command, rule*.
impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum, *obtain* (a request).
impetus, -ūs, m., *attack*; **impetum facere in**, *charge upon*.
in, prep. with acc., *into*; with abl., *in, on*.
incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsum, *fire, burn*.
incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum, *urge on, rouse*.
incolō, incolere, incoluī, *inhabit, dwell*.
incommodum, -ī, n., *misfortune*.
inde, adv., *from there*.
indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductum, *lead into, draw*. [in + dūcō].
īnferior, īnferius, comp., *lower*.
īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātum, 497, with dat., *bring upon, inflict upon*; **bellum īnferre**, *make war upon*. [in + ferō].
īnfluō, īnfluere, īnflūxī, īnflūxum, *flow into, empty into*.
ingēns, ingentis, *enormous, great*.
inīquus, -a, -um, *unfair, unfavorable*. [aequus].
iniūria, -ae, f., *wrong, injury*. [iūs].
inopia, -ae, f., *want, lack*.
inquit, used in quoting, *said he*.
īnsidiae, -ārum, f. pl., *ambush, treachery*.
īnsigne, īnsignis, n., *decoration*; pl., *insignia*.
īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum, *draw up*.
īnsula, -ae, f., *island*.
integer, integra, integrum, *unwearied, fresh*.
intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum, *understand*.
inter, prep. with acc., *between, among*; **inter sē**, *among themselves, one another*.
intereā, adv., *meanwhile*. [inter + is].
interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum, *put to death, kill*. [inter + faciō].
interim, adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile*. [inter].

intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum, *interrupt*; pass., *intervene*. [inter + mittō].

intervāllum, -ī, n., *interval*.

intrā, prep. with acc., *within*. [inter].

inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum, *find*. [in + veniō].

invidia, -ae, f., *envy, unpopularity*.

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 484, *self; myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself,* etc.; *very*.

is, ea, id, 483, *this, that; he, she, it*.

iste, ista, istud, 483, *that of yours, that*.

ita, adv., *in this way, thus, so*. [is].

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy*.

itaque, conj., *and so, therefore*. [ita + -que].

item, adv., *likewise*.

iter, itineris, n., *march; route*; **iter facere,** *march*. [eō].

iterum, adv., *again, a second time*.

iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum, *order*.

iugum, -ī, n., *ridge*.

Iuppiter, Iovis, m., *Jupiter, Jove*.

iūrandum, see **iūs**.

iūs, iūris, n., *right, rights*; **iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī,** *oath*.

iūstitia, -ae, f., *justice, uprightness*.

iuvenis, iuvenis, 313 (note), 311, *young*.

K

Karthāginiēnsēs, -ium, m. pl., *the Carthaginians*.

Karthāgō, Karthāginis, f., *Carthage*, a city of Africa; **Karthāgō Nova,** *New Carthage*.

L

L., the abbreviation for **Lūcius**.

labor, labōris, m., *labor, exertion*.

lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum, *harass*.

lātē, adv., *widely*. [lātus].

Latīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Latins*.

lātus, -a, -um, *wide, broad*.

latus, lateris, n., *side, flank*.

Lāvīnium, -ī, n., *Lavinium*.

lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f., *embassy*.

lēgātus, -ī, m., *ambassador; lieutenant*.

legiō, legiōnis, f., *legion*, a division of the Roman army.

Lemannus, -ī, m., (*Lake*) *Geneva*.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law*.

līber, lībera, līberum, *free*.

līberē, adv., *freely*. [līber].

līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātum, *set free, free*. [līber].

licet, licēre, licuit or **licitum est,** 397 (note), *it is permitted*.

Lingonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Lingones*.

litterae, -ārum, f. pl., *despatch, letter*.

locus, -ī, m., 86 (note), *place, position*.

longē, adv., *far, by far*. [longus].

longus, -a, -um, *long*.

lupa, -ae, f., *wolf*.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light*.

M

M., the abbreviation for **Mārcus**.

magis, adv., *more*. [magnus].

magistrātus, -ūs, m., *magistracy; magistrate*.

magnitūdō, magnitūdinis, f., *greatness, size*. [magnus].

magnus, -a, -um, 476, *large, great.*
Māgō, Māgōnis, m., *Mago.*
māiōrēs, -um, m. pl., *ancestors.*
male, adv., 318, *badly, unsuccessfully.* [malus].
mālō, mālle, māluī, 496, *wish rather, prefer.* [magis + volō].
malus, -a, -um, 476, *bad.*
mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum, *intrust.* [manus + dō].
maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, *stay, remain.*
manus, -ūs, f., *hand; band, body.*
mare, maris, n., *sea.*
mātrimōnium, -ī, n., *marriage.*
Mātrona, -ae, m., *the Matrona*, now called *Marne.*
maximē, adv., *most, especially.*
medius, -a, -um, *middle, the middle of.*
memoria, -ae, f., *memory.*
mercātor, mercātōris, m., *trader.*
mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum, *deserve.*
meus, -a, -um, *my, mine.*
mīles, mīlitis, m., *soldier.*
mīlitāris, mīlitāre, *military;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *art of war.* [mīles].
mīlle, 480, 338, *thousand;* **mīlia passuum**, *miles.*
minimē, adv., *least, very little.*
minus, adv., *less.*
miser, misera, miserum, *wretched, miserable.*
Mithridātēs, -is, m., *Mithridates.*
Mithridāticus, -a, -um, *with Mithridates, Mithridatic.*
mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, *send.*
moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum, *advise, warn.*
mōns, montis, m., *mountain.*
morior, morī, mortuus sum, *die.*
mors, mortis, f., *death.* [morior].
mōs, mōris, m., *custom.*
moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, *move.*
mulier, mulieris, f., *woman.*
multitūdō, multitūdinis, f., *great number, number.* [multus].
multum, adv., 318, *much.* [multus].
multus, -a, -um, 311, 312, *much;* pl., *many;* **multō**, *by much, much.*
mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum, *fortify.*
mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f., *fortification, defenses.* [mūniō].
mūnus, mūneris, n., *gift; task, duty.*
mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*
mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum, *change.*

N

nam, conj., *for.*
nātiō, nātiōnis, f., *people, nation.*
nātū, 311 (note).
nātūra, -ae, f., *nature, character.*
nātus, -a, -um, *born, old* (in exact statements of age).
nauta, -ae, m., *sailor.* [nāvis].
nāvis, nāvis, f., 185 (note), *ship, vessel;* **nāvem solvere**, *set sail.*
-ne, used to denote a question; in indirect questions, *whether.*
nē, conj., *that not, lest.*
nec, see **neque.**
neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum, *disregard, neglect.*
nēmō, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**, 237 (note), m. and f., *no one.*
neque or **nec**, conj., *and not, nor.*

nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum, *not know.* [sciō].
neuter, neutra, neutrum, 288, *neither.*
nihil, indeclinable, n., *nothing.*
nisi, conj., *if not, unless, except.*
nōbilis, nōbile, *well-known; of noble birth, noble.*
noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat., *do harm to, injure.*
noctū, adv., *at night, by night.* [nox].
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, 496, *be unwilling, not wish.* [volō].
nōmen, nōminis, n., *name.*
nōn, adv., *not;* **nōn iam,** *no longer;* **nōn nūllī,** *some, several.*
nōndum, adv., *not yet.* [nōn + dum].
nōnne, adv., used to introduce a question to which an affirmative answer is expected, *not?* [nōn + -ne].
noster, nostra, nostrum, *our, ours.*
novem, indeclinable, *nine.*
novus, -a, -um, *new;* **novissimus, -a, -um,** *last;* **novissimum agmen,** *rear.*
nox, noctis, f., *night.*
nūllus, -a, -um, 288, *no, none;* **nōn nūllī,** *some, several.*
num, adv., used to introduce a question to which a negative answer is expected.
numerus, -ī, m., *number.*
Numidae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Numidians.*
Numidia, -ae, f., *Numidia,* a country of Africa.
numquam, adv., *never.*
nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum, *announce, report.* [nūntius].
nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger; news.*
nūper, adv., *recently.*

O

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.*
obses, obsidis, m., *hostage.*
obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentum, *hold, possess.* [teneō].
occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsum, *kill.*
occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum, *seize.*
occurrō, occurrere, occucurrī or **occurrī, occursum,** with dat., *run against, meet.*
octō, indeclinable, *eight.*
octōgintā, indeclinable, *eighty.* [octō].
odium, -ī, n., *hatred.*
omnīnō, adv., *in all, at all.* [omnis].
omnis, omne, *all.*
opera, -ae, f., *effort, services.* [opus].
opīniō, opīniōnis, f., *opinion; reputation.*
oppidum, -ī, n., *town.*
opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum, *overwhelm, crush.* [premō].
oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f., *attack, siege.* [oppugnō].
oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum, *attack, besiege.* [pugnō].
ops, opis, f., *aid;* pl., *resources.*
opus, operis, n., *work.*
Orgetorīx, Orgetorīgis, m., *Orgetorix.*

P

P., the abbreviation for **Pūblius**.

pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātum, *pacify, subdue.* [**pāx**].

Padus, -ī. m., *the Po*, a river of Italy.

paene, adv., *almost.*

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, division.*

palūs, palūdis, f., *swamp, marsh.*

parātus, -a, -um, *prepared, ready.* [**parō**].

parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum, *prepare.*

pars, partis, f., *part; direction, side.*

parvus, -a, -um, 476, *small, little.*

passus, -ūs, m., *pace* (two steps, about 5 feet in our measure); **mīlia passuum,** *miles.*

pater, patris, m., 459, *father*; pl., *senators.*

patior, patī, passus sum, *suffer, allow.*

patria, -ae, f., *fatherland, country.* [**pater**].

paucī, -ae, -a, pl., *a few.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

pecūnia, -ae, f., *money.*

pedes, peditis, m., *foot-soldier*; pl., *infantry.* [**pēs**].

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, *drive back, rout.*

per, prep. with acc., *through.*

perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum, *finish, complete.* [**per** + **faciō**].

perīculum, -ī, n., *danger, peril.*

permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtum, *influence; disturb, alarm.* [**per** + **moveō**].

perpetuus, -a, -um, *unbroken, continual.*

persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, with dat., *persuade.*

perterreō, perterrēre, perterruī, perterritum, *frighten*; **perterritus,** *panic-stricken.* [**per** + **terreō**].

pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī, *extend.* [**per** + **teneō**].

perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātum, *throw into confusion.*

perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum, *arrive, come.* [**per** + **veniō**].

pēs, pedis, m., *foot*; **pedem referre,** *fall back, retreat.*

petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** *seek, beg.*

pīlum, -ī, n., *javelin.*

plēbs, plēbis, f., *the common people, the plebeians.*

Poenī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Carthaginians.*

polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum, *promise.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, *place, pitch* (a camp).

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

Pontus, -ī, m., *Pontus*, a country of Asia Minor.

populus, -ī, m., *people, nation.*

porta, -ae, f., *gate* (of a city).

possum, posse, potuī, 494, *be able, can.* [**sum**].

post, adv., *after, afterward*; prep with acc., *after; behind.*

posteā, adv., *afterward.* [**post** + **is**].

posterus, -a, -um, *following, next.* [**post**].

postquam, conj., *after*. [post + quam].

postrīdiē, adv., *the next day*. [posterus + diēs].

postulō, **postulāre**, **postulāvī**, **postulātum**, *demand*.

potēns, **potentis**, *powerful*. [possum].

potestās, **potestātis**, f., *power*.

potior, **potīrī**, **potītus sum**, with abl., *get possession of, get*.

praecipiō, **praecipere**, **praecēpī**, **praeceptum**, with dat., *give directions, instruct*. [capiō].

praeda, -ae, f., *booty, plunder*.

praedicō, **praedicāre**, **praedicāvī**, **praedicātum**, *declare; boast*.

praeficiō, **praeficere**, **praefēcī**, **praefectum**, with dat., *put in command of*. [faciō].

praemittō, **praemittere**, **praemīsī**, **praemissum**, *send forward, send ahead*. [mittō].

praemium, -ī, n., *reward*.

praesertim, adv., *especially*.

praesidium, -ī, n., *guard, garrison*.

praestō, **praestāre**, **praestitī**, **praestitum** or **praestātum**, with dat., *stand before, surpass*.

praeter, prep. with acc., *except, besides*.

praetereā, adv., *besides*. [praeter + is].

praetor, **praetōris**, m., *praetor*, a Roman magistrate.

premō, **premere**, **pressī**, **pressum**, *press, press hard, overwhelm*.

prīmō, adv., *at first*. [prīmus].

prīmum, adv., *first*. [prīmus].

prīmus, -a, -um, *first*.

prīnceps, **prīncipis**, m., *leading man, head*. [prīmus + capiō].

prīncipātus, -ūs, m., *leadership*. [prīnceps].

prīstinus, -a, -um, *former, old-time*.

prō, prep. with abl., *in front of, before; in place of, for; in proportion to, considering*.

probō, **probāre**, **probāvī**, **probātum**, *approve*.

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, engagement*.

profectiō, **profectiōnis**, f., *departure*. [proficīscor].

proficīscor, **proficīscī**, **profectus sum**, *set out, start*.

prōgredior, **prōgredī**, **prōgressus sum**, *advance*.

prohibeō, **prohibēre**, **prohibuī**, **prohibitum**, *keep, prevent*. [prō + habeō].

prōiciō, **prōicere**, **prōiēcī**, **prōiectum**, *throw down, fling away*. [prō + iaciō].

prope, adv., *near, nearly, almost*; prep. with acc., *near*.

properō, **properāre**, **properāvī**, **properātum**, *hasten*.

propinquus, -a, -um, *near, neighboring*. [prope].

propior, **propius**, comp., with dat., *nearer*. [prope].

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of*. [prope].

propterea, adv., *on that account*; **propterea quod**, *for the reason that, because*. [propter + is].

prōsum, **prōdesse**, **prōfuī**, **prōfutūrus**, 495, with dat., *benefit*. [prō + sum].

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province.*
proximus, -a, -um, with dat., *nearest, next.* [prope].
prūdēns, prūdentis, *wise.*
Prūsiās, Prūsiae, m., *Prusias,* king of Bithynia in Asia Minor.
pūblicus, -a, -um, *of the state, public;* **rēs pūblica,** *public interest, commonwealth, republic.*
puer, puerī, m., *boy;* pl., *children.*
pugna, -ae, f., *battle, fight.* [pugnō].
pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum, *fight.*
Pūnicus, -a, -um, *Punic, Carthaginian.*
putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum, *think.*
Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, with **montēs,** *the Pyrenees Mountains,* between Gaul and Spain.

Q

Q., the abbreviation for **Quīntus.**
quadrāgintā, indeclinable, *forty.* [quattuor].
quadringentī, -ae, -a, pl., *four hundred.* [quattuor + centum].
quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, *ask, inquire.*
quam, adv., *than;* with superlative, *as . . . as possible.*
quārtus, -a, -um, *fourth.* [quattuor].
quattuor, indeclinable, *four.*
-que, enclitic, *and.*
quī, quae, quod, 485, *who, which, that.*
quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), 487, *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing.*
quidem, adv., *indeed.*
quīngentī, -ae, -a, pl., *five hundred.* [quīnque + centum].
quīnquāgēnsimus, -a, -um, *fiftieth.*
quīnque, indeclinable, *five.*
quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), interrog., 486, *who? which? what?*
quis (quī), quae or **qua, quid (quod),** indef., 487, *any, any one, anything.*
quisquam, quicquam, 487, *any one, anything.*
quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), 487, *each, each one, each thing.*
quō, conj., *in order that, so that, that.* [quī].
quod, conj., *because.*
quondam, adv., *once upon a time, formerly, once.*
quoque, adv., *also.*

R

recēns, recentis, *recent.*
recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum, *take back, receive;* **sē recipere,** *betake oneself, retreat.* [capiō].
reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum, *give back, restore.* [dō].
redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum, *reduce, bring.* [agō].
redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum, *lead back, bring back.* [dūcō].
referō, referre, rettulī, relātum, 497, *bring back;* **pedem referre,** *fall back, retreat.* [ferō].
rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātum, *reign.* [rēgnum].
rēgnum, -ī, n., *reign, throne.* [rēx].
regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum, *guide, direct.*

relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum, *leave, abandon.*

reliquus, -a, -um, *the remaining, the rest of.* [relinquō].

remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum, *send back, return.* [mittō].

removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum, *move back, remove.* [moveō].

renovō, renovāre, renovāvī, renovātum, *renew.*

renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātum, *report.* [nūntiō].

repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum, *drive back, repulse.* [pellō].

repentīnus, -a, -um, *sudden.*

reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum, *find.*

rēs, -eī, f., *thing, affair, matter;* **quā rē**, *on account of which thing, why, wherefore, therefore;* **rēs frūmentāria**, *supply of grain;* **rēs gestae**, *deeds, achievements;* **rēs mīlitāris**, *art of war;* **rēs pūblica**, *public interest, commonwealth, republic;* **secundae rēs**, *prosperity.*

resistō, resistere, restitī, with dat., *resist.*

respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum, *reply, answer.*

respōnsum, -ī, n., *reply, answer.* [respondeō].

restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtum, *restore.* [statuō].

retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum, *retain.* [teneō].

revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum, 388 (note), *turn back, return.* [vertō].

revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum, *call back, recall.* [vocō].

rēx, rēgis, m., *king.* [regō].

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine*, a river between Gaul and Germany.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone*, a river of Gaul.

Rhodiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Rhodians*, the people of Rhodes, an island near the coast of Asia Minor.

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* (of a river).

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, *Roman;* **Rōmānī**, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Romans.*

rūrsus, adv., *again.*

rūs, rūris, n., *the country*, opposed to the city.

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Sabines.*

sacrificium, -ī, n., *sacrifice.*

saepe, adv., *often, frequently.*

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

Saguntum, -ī, n., *Saguntum.*

salūs, salūtis, f., *safety.*

satis, indeclinable noun and adv., *enough, sufficiently.*

scientia, -ae, f., *knowledge.* [sciō].

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, *know.*

Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis, m., *Scipio.*

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, *write.*

scūtum, -ī, n., *shield.*

secundus, -a, -um, *second; favorable;* **secundae rēs**, *prosperity.* [sequor].

sed, conj., *but.*

sēdecim, indeclinable, *sixteen.* [sex + decem].

sēditiō, sēditiōnis, f., *sedition, insurrection.* [eō].

semper, adv., *always*.
Sēna, -ae, f., *Sena*, a town.
senātus, -ūs, m., *senate*. [**senex**].
senex, **senis**, 313 (note), 311, *old*.
sententia, -ae, f., *opinion, view*.
septem, indeclinable, *seven*.
septimus, -a, -um, *seventh*. [**septem**].
Sēquana, -ae, f., *the Sequana*, now called *Seine*.
Sēquanus, -ī, m., *a Sequanian, the Sequanian*; pl., *the Sequani, the Sequanians*.
sequor, **secūtus sum**, *follow*.
servitūs, **servitūtis**, f., *slavery*. [**servus**].
servō, **servāre**, **servāvī**, **servātum**, *save, preserve*.
servus, -ī, m., *slave*.
sex, indeclinable, *six*.
sī, conj., *if*.
sīc, adv., *in this way, so, thus*.
Sicilia, -ae, f., *Sicily*, an island south of Italy.
signum, -ī, n., *signal; standard* (military).
silva, -ae, f., *wood, forest*.
similis, **simile**, 475, with dat., *like*.
simul, adv., *at the same time*. [**similis**].
sine, prep. with abl., *without*.
singulī, -ae, -a, pl., *one by one, singly*.
sinister, **sinistra**, **sinistrum**, *left*; **sinistra**, -ae, f., *left hand*.
societās, **societātis**, f., *alliance*. [**socius**].
socius, -ī, m., *ally*. [**sequor**].
soleō, **solēre**, **solitus sum**, 382, *be accustomed*.
sōlum, adv., *only*; **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but even, not only . . . but also*. [**sōlus**].
sōlus, -a, -um, 288, *alone*.
solvō, **solvere**, **solvī**, **solūtum**, *loose*; **nāvem solvere**, *set sail*.
spērō, **spērāre**, **spērāvī**, **spērātum**, *hope*. [**spēs**].
spēs, -ēī, f., *hope*.
statim, adv., *immediately, at once, instantly*.
statuō, **statuere**, **statuī**, **statūtum**, *decide, determine*.
studeō, **studēre**, **studuī**, with dat., *be eager for, be devoted to*.
sub, prep. with acc. and abl., *under*.
subitō, adv., *suddenly*.
subsidium, -ī, n., *reserve, reinforcement, assistance*.
succēdō, **succēdere**, **successī**, **successum**, with dat., *take the place of, succeed*.
suī, 482, *self*; *himself, herself, itself, themselves*; *him, her, it, them*.
sum, **esse**, **fuī**, **futūrus**, 493, *be*.
summus, -a, -um, *highest, utmost, the top of*.
sūmō, **sūmere**, **sūmpsī**, **sūmptum**, *take, assume*; **supplicium sūmere**, *exact a penalty, inflict punishment*.
superior, **superius**, comp., *higher*; *former*.
superō, **superāre**, **superāvī**, **superātum**, *excel*; *conquer*.
supplicium, -ī, n., *punishment, penalty*.
suscipiō, **suscipere**, **suscēpī**, **susceptum**, *undertake*. [**sub** + **capiō**].
suspīciō, **suspīciōnis**, f., *suspicion*.

sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum, *sustain*. [sub + teneō].

suus, -a, -um, *his* (*own*), *her* (*own*), *its* (*own*), *their* (*own*). [suī].

Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl., *Syracuse*, a city of Sicily.

Syria, -ae, f., *Syria*, a country of Asia.

T

T., the abbreviation for **Titus**.

tam, adv., *so*, modifying adjectives and adverbs.

tamen, conj., *yet*, *nevertheless*.

tandem, adv., *at last*, *finally*.

tantus, -a, -um, *so great*, *so much*. [tam].

Tarquinius, -ī, m., *Tarquinius*; pl., *the Tarquins*.

tēlum, -ī, n., *missile*, *weapon*.

temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum, *try*, *tempt*.

tempus, temporis, n., *time*.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *hold*, *keep*.

tergum, -ī, n., *back*; **terga vertere**, *flee*.

terra, -ae, f., *earth*, *land*.

terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum, *frighten*, *terrify*.

tertius, -a, -um, *third*. [trēs].

Teutonēs, -um, m. pl., *the Teutones*.

Ti., the abbreviation for **Tiberius**.

Tīcīnus, -ī, m., *the Ticinus*, a river.

Tigurīnus, -ī, m., *Tigurinus*.

timeō, timēre, timuī, *fear*, *be anxious*.

timor, timōris, m., *fear*. [timeō].

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum, *raise*; *remove*.

tōtus, -a, -um, 288, *whole*, *entire*.

trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum, *hand over*, *surrender*. [trāns + dō].

trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum, *lead across*, *bring over*. [trāns + dūcō].

trāns, prep. with acc., *across*.

trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum, 498, *go across*, *cross*. [trāns + eō].

Trasumennus, -ī, m., (*Lake*) *Trasimene*, in Etruria.

Trebia, -ae, m., *the Trebia*, a river.

trecentī, -ae, -a, pl., *three hundred*. [trēs + centum].

tredecim, indeclinable, *thirteen*. [trēs + decem].

trēs, tria, pl., 480, *three*.

tribūnus, -ī, m., *tribune*, a Roman magistrate.

trīduum, -ī, n., *three days*. [trēs + diēs].

trīgintā, indeclinable, *thirty*. [trēs].

Trōia, -ae, f., *Troy*, a city of Asia Minor.

Trōiānī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Trojans*, the people of Troy.

tū, tuī, 481, *you*.

Tulingī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Tulingi*.

tum, adv., *at that time*, *then*.

tuus, -a, -um, *your*, *yours*. [tū].

U

ubi, adv., *where*; conj., *when*.

ūllus, -a, -um, 288, *any*.

ultimus, -a, -um, *furthermost*, *extreme*.

ūnā, adv., *together*, *in company*. [ūnus].

unde, adv., *whence*.

ūndēvīgintī, indeclinable, *nineteen*. [ūnus + dē + vīgintī].

undique, adv., *from all sides, on all sides*.

ūniversus, -a, -um, *all together, in a body*. [ūnus + vertō].

ūnus, -a, -um, 465, *one, only*.

urbs, urbis, f., *city*.

ūsque, adv., *up, even*; **ūsque ad**, *up to, even to*.

ut, conj., *as*; *in order that, so that, that*.

uter, utra, utrum, 465, *which?* (of two).

uterque, utraque, utrumque, 288, *each* (of two), *both*. [uter + -que].

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, with abl., *use*.

uxor, uxōris, f., *wife*.

V

vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum, *be vacant*.

vadum, -ī, n., *ford*.

vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum, *roam*.

vāllum, -ī, n., *rampart, wall*.

vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum, *ravage*.

Vēiī, -ōrum, m. pl., *Veii*, a city of Etruria.

venēnum, -ī, n., *poison*.

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come*.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versum, *turn*; **terga vertere**, *flee*.

vescor, vescī, with abl., *eat*.

vester, vestra, vestrum, *your, yours*.

vetus, veteris, 469. *old* (not new).

via, -ae, f., *road, way*.

victor, victōris, m., *victor*. [vincō].

victōria, -ae, f., *victory*. [victor].

vīcus, -ī, m., *village*.

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum, *see*; pass., *seem*.

vigilia, -ae, f., *watch*, a fourth part of the night.

vīgintī, indeclinable, *twenty*.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, *defeat*.

vir, virī, m., 458, *man*.

virtūs, virtūtis, f., *bravery, valor*. [vir].

vīs, vīs, f., 463, *force, violence*; pl., *strength*.

vīta, -ae, f., *life*.

vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum, *avoid*.

vīvus, -a, -um, *alive*.

vix, adv., *hardly*.

vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum, *call*.

volō, velle, voluī, 496, *be willing, wish*.

voluntās, voluntātis, f., *wish, disposition*. [volō].

vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum, *wound*. [vulnus].

vulnus, vulneris, n., *wound*.

Z

Zama, -ae, f., *Zama*, a town of Africa.

ENGLISH–LATIN VOCABULARY

The numbers refer to the sections in which the inflection of the words is shown, but no reference is given where the inflection is regular.

A

abandon, relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum.

able: be able, possum, posse, potuī, 494.

about, dē, prep. with abl.; circum, prep. with acc.; circiter, adv.; *about to*, fut. act. part.; *bring about*, efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum.

absent, absēns, absentis, 324 (note); *be absent*, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, 493.

access, aditus, -ūs, m.

accomplish, efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum.

account: on account of, abl. of cause or reason; ob, propter, prep. with acc.

accustomed: be accustomed, soleō, solēre, solitus sum, 382; cōnsuēvī, perf.

achievements, rēs gestae.

across, trāns, prep. with acc.; *lead across*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum.

active, ācer, ācris, ācre.

advance, prōgredior, prōgredī, prōgressus sum.

adversary, adversārius, -ī, m.

advise, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.

affair, rēs, -eī, f.

afflict, adficiō, adficere, adfēcī, adfectum.

Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.

after, post, adv., and prep. with acc.; postquam, conj. with perf. ind.

afterward, post, posteā.

again, iterum, rūrsus.

against, contrā, prep. with acc.

agger, agger, aggeris, m.

aid, auxilium, -ī, n.; ops, opis, f.

alarm, permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtum.

Alba Longa, Alba Longa.

alive, vīvus, -a, -um.

all, omnis, omne; *at all*, omnīnō; *all together*, ūniversus, -a, -um.

alliance, societās, societātis, f.

allow, patior, patī, passus sum.

ally, socius, -ī, m.

almost, ferē, prope, paene.

alone, sōlus, -a, -um, 288.

Alps, Alpēs, -ium, f. pl.

already, iam.

also, quoque; *not only . . . but also*, nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam.

altar, āra, -ae, f.

although, cum, conj. with subj.

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.
ambush, insidiae, -ārum, f. pl.
among, apud, prep. with acc.; inter, prep. with acc.
ancestors, māiōrēs, -um, m. pl.
and, et, -que, atque or ac; *and not*, neque or nec.
animal, animal, animālis, n.
announce, nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum.
another, alius, alia, aliud, 465; *one another*, inter sē.
answer, respondeō, respondēre, respondī, respōnsum; respōnsum, -ī, n.
anxious: be anxious, timeō, timēre, timuī.
any, ūllus, -a, -um, 288; quī, quae or qua, quod, 487; *any one*, quis, quisquam, 487; *anything*, quid, quicquam, 487.
approach, appropinquō, appropinquāre, appropinquāvī, appropinquātum; accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum; aditus, -ūs, m.
approve, probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum.
arm, armō, armāre, armāvī, armātum.
arms, arma, -ōrum, n. pl.
army, exercitus, -ūs, m.
arrange, dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum.
arrest, comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum.
arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.
arrive, perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum.
arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.
art of war, rēs mīlitāris.
as, cum, conj. with subj.; ut, conj. with ind.
Ascanius, Ascanius, -ī, m.
aside: turn aside, āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum.
ask, quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.
assemble, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum.
assistance, subsidium, -ī, n.
at, ad, prep. with acc.; locative; abl. of time; *at all*, omnīnō; *at first*, prīmō; *at last*, tandem; *at night*, noctū; *at once*, statim; *at that time*, tum; *at the same time*, simul.
attack, oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum; adorior, adorīrī, adortus sum; oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis, f.; impetus, -ūs, m.
authority, auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.
avoid, vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum.
await, exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum.
away: be away, absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, 493; *away from*, ab or ā, prep. with abl.; *carry away*, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, 497; *go away*, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum; *send away*, dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum; *take away*, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum.

B

back, tergum, -ī, n.; *give back*, reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum; *send back*, remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum.

bad, malus, -a, -um, 476.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, n. pl.
bank, rīpa, -ae, f.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, m.
battle, pugna, -ae, f.; proelium, -ī, n.
be, sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, 493.
bear, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 497.
because, quod, conj.; propterea quod.
before, ante, prep. with acc.; anteā, adv.
beg, petō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petītum.
began, *have begun*, coepī, perf.
behind, post, prep. with acc.
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m. pl.
benefit, prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus, 495, with dat.
besides, praetereā.
besiege, oppugnō, oppugnāre, oppugnāvī, oppugnātum.
between, inter, prep. with acc.
boast, praedicō, praedicāre, praedicāvī, praedicātum.
body, corpus, corporis, n.; (in sense of *band*) manus, -ūs, f.
bold, audāx, audācis.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
both . . . and, et . . . et.
boundaries, fīnēs, -ium, m. pl.
boy, puer, puerī, m.
brave, fortis, forte.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, virtūs, virtūtis, f.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bring, dēdūcō, dēdūcere, dēdūxī, dēductum; addūcō, addūcere, addūxī, adductum; (in sense of *reduce*) redigō, redigere, redēgī, redāctum; *bring about*, efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum; *bring out*, ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum; *bring over*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum; *bring together*, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum, 497; *bring up*, ēducō, ēducāre, ēducāvī, ēducātum.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brother, frāter, frātris, m., 206 (note).
build, aedificō, aedificāre, aedificāvī, aedificātum.
building, aedificium, -ī, n.
burn, incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsum.
but, sed.
by, ab or ā, prep. with abl.; abl. of means; dat. of agent.

C

Caesar, Caesar, Caesaris, m.
call, vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum; (in sense of *name*) appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum.
camp, castra, -ōrum, n. pl.
can, possum, posse, potuī, 494; *cannot*, nōn possum.
captive, captīva, -ae, f.; captīvus, -ī, m.
capture, expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātum; capiō, capere, cēpī, captum.
care, cūra, -ae, f.
carnage, caedēs, caedis, f.
carry, ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum, 497; *carry away*, efferō, efferre, extulī, ēlātum, 497; *carry on*, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum.

catch sight of, cōnspicor, cōnspicārī, cōnspicātus sum.
cause, causa, -ae, f.
cavalry, equitēs, -um, m. pl.; equitātus, -ūs, m.
cease, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum.
centurion, centuriō, centuriōnis, m.
certain, certus, -a, -um; *a certain, a certain one, a certain thing*, quīdam, quaedam, quiddam (quoddam), 487.
change, mūtō, mūtāre, mūtāvī, mūtātum.
character, nātūra, -ae, f.
check, impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum.
children, puerī, -ōrum, m. pl.
choose, dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum.
citizen, cīvis, cīvis, m. and f., 192 (note).
city, urbs, urbis, f.
civil, cīvīlis, cīvīle.
climb, ascendō, ascendere, ascendī, ascēnsum.
close, claudō, claudere, clausī, clausum; *in close order*, cōnfertus, -a, -um.
colleague, collēga, -ae, m.
collect, cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctum.
column, agmen, agminis, n.
come, veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum; perveniō, pervenīre, pervēnī, perventum; *come off*, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum; *come to*, accēdō, accēdere, accessī, accessum; *come together*, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum.
command, imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat.; *put in command of*, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, with dat.
commander, dux, ducis, m.
common people, plēbs, plēbis, f.
company: in company, ūnā.
complete, efficiō, efficere, effēcī, effectum; perficiō, perficere, perfēcī, perfectum.
conceal, abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum.
concerning, dē, prep. with abl.
conference, conloquium, -ī, n.
conquer, superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum.
considering, prō, prep. with abl.
consul, cōnsul, cōnsulis, m.
consume, cōnsūmō, cōnsūmere, cōnsūmpsī, cōnsūmptum.
contend, contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum.
Cornelius, Cornēlius, -ī, m.
country, patria, -ae, f.; *the country*, rūs, rūris, n.
courage, animus, -ī, m.
cross, trānseō, trānsīre, trānsiī, trānsitum, 498.
crush, opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.

D

daily, cottīdiē.
danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
dare, audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 382.
daring, audāx, audācis.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, f.

day, diēs, -ēī, m.
death, mors, mortis, f.
decemvirs, decemvirī, -ōrum, m. pl.
decide, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum.
decoration, īnsigne, īnsignis, n.
deeds, rēs gestae.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
defeat, vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum.
defend, dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfēnsum.
defenses, mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f.
defile, angustiae, -ārum, f. pl.
definite, certus, -a, -um.
demand, postulō, postulāre, postulāvī, postulātum.
departure, profectiō, profectiōnis, f.
desert, dēserō, dēserere, dēseruī, dēsertum.
deserve, mereō, merēre, meruī, meritum.
desire, cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum; cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.
despair, dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum.
despatch, litterae, -ārum, f. pl.
destroy, dēleō, dēlēre, dēlēvī, dēlētum.
determine, statuō, statuere, statuī, statūtum; cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum.
dictator, dictātor, dictātōris, m.
die, morior, morī, mortuus sum.
difficult, difficilis, difficile, 475.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, f.
direct, regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.
direction, pars, partis, f.
disaster, calamitās, calamitātis, f.
discretion, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
disposition, voluntās, voluntātis, f.
disregard, neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum.
distribute, dispōnō, dispōnere, disposuī, dispositum.
district, pāgus, -ī, m.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
divide, dīvidō, dīvidere, dīvīsī, dīvīsum.
divine, dīvīnus, -a, -um.
do, faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; *be done*, fīō, fierī, factus sum, 499.
draw, indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductum; *draw up*, īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum.
drive: drive back, pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum; repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum; *drive out*, expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum.
duty, mūnus, mūneris, n.

E

each (of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque, 288; *each, each one, each thing*, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque), 487.
eager: be eager for, studeō, studēre, studuī, with dat.
easily, facile.
easy, facilis, facile, 475.
eat, vescor, vescī, with abl.
effectively, commodē.
Egeria, Ēgeria, -ae, f.
eight, octō.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
either . . . or, aut . . . aut.
elect, creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum.
elephant, elephantus, -ī, m.
embassy, lēgātiō, lēgātiōnis, f.

empty into, **influō, influere, influxī, influxum.**
encamp, **cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum.**
end, **fīnis, fīnis**, m.
enemy, **hostis, hostis**, m.
engagement, **proelium, -ī**, n.
enjoy, **fruor, fruī, frūctus sum**, with abl.
enormous, **ingēns, ingentis.**
enough, **satis.**
entire, **tōtus, -a, -um**, 288.
envy, **invidia, -ae**, f.
escape, **effugiō, effugere, effūgī.**
especially, **maximē, praesertim.**
even, **etiam, ūsque**; *even to*, **ūsque ad.**
everything, **omnia.**
excel, **superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum.**
except, **praeter**, prep. with acc.; **nisi**, conj.
exertion, **labor, labōris**, m.
exhaust, **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.**
expel, **expellō, expellere, expulī, expulsum.**
extend, **pertineō, pertinēre, pertinuī.**

F

fair, **aequus, -a, -um.**
fame, **fāma, -ae**, f.
famous, **clārus, -a, -um.**
far, **longē.**
father, **pater, patris**, m., 459.
fatherland, **patria, -ae**, f.
favor, **grātia, -ae**, f.
favorable, **aequus, -a, -um.**
fear, **timeō, timēre, timuī**; **timor, timōris**, m.
fellow-citizen, **cīvis, cīvis**, m. and f., 192 (note).
few, **paucī, -ae, -a**, pl.
field, **ager, agrī**, m.
fiercely, **ācriter.**
fifth, **quīntus, -a, -um.**
fight, **pugnō, pugnāre, pugnāvī, pugnātum.**
finally, **tandem.**
find, **reperiō, reperīre, repperī, repertum**; **inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum**; *find out*, **cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum.**
finish, **cōnficiō, cōnficere, cōnfēcī, cōnfectum.**
fire, **incendō, incendere, incendī, incēnsum**; **ignis, ignis**, m., 388 (note).
first, **prīmus, -a, -um**; **prīmum**, adv.; *at first*, **prīmō**, adv.
five, **quīnque.**
fix, **cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum.**
flank, **latus, lateris**, n.
flee, **fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus**; **terga vertere.**
fleet, **classis, classis**, f.
flight, **fuga, -ae**, f.
fling away, **prōiciō, prōicere, prōiēcī, prōiectum.**
follow, **sequor, sequī, secūtus sum**; *follow up*, **cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum.**
following, **posterus, -a, -um.**
foot, **pēs, pedis**, m.
for, dat. or acc. of extent or duration; **nam**, conj.; **enim**, conj.
force, **vīs, vīs**, f., 463; *forces*, **cōpiae, -ārum**, f. pl.

forced march, magnum iter.
ford, vadum, -ī, n.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
form a plan, cōnsilium capere.
former, prīstinus, -a, -um; superior, superius, comp.
fortification, mūnītiō, mūnītiōnis, f.
fortify, mūniō, mūnīre, mūnīvī, mūnītum.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forty, quadrāgintā.
forward: send forward, praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissum.
found, condō, condere, condidī, conditum.
four, quattuor; *four hundred*, quadringentī, -ae, -a, pl.
free, līber, lībera, līberum; *free, set free*, līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātum.
freely, līberē.
frequent, crēber, crēbra, crēbrum.
frequently, saepe.
fresh, integer, integra, integrum.
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.
friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.
friendship, amīcitia, -ae, f.
frighten, terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum.
from, abl. of separation; ab or ā, dē, ex or ē, prep. with abl.
front: in front of, prō, prep. with abl.
furthermost, ultimus, -a, -um.

G

garrison, praesidium, -ī, n.
gate, porta, -ae, f.
Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.; *the Gauls*, Gallī, -ōrum, m. pl.
general, imperātor, imperātōris, m.
get possession of, potior, potīrī, potītus sum, with abl.
gift, mūnus, mūneris, n.
give, dō, dare, dedī, datum, 54 (note); *give back*, reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum; *give up*, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum.
glad: be glad, gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 382.
glorious, clārus, -a, -um.
go, eō, īre, iī, itum, 498; *go away*, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum; *go out*, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum; *going to*, fut. act. part.
god, deus, -ī, m., 463.
goddess, dea, -ae, f.
good, bonus, -a, -um, 476.
grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.
grant, concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum.
great, magnus, -a, -um, 476; ingēns, ingentis; *great number*, multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.; *so great*, tantus, -a, -um.
Greeks, Graecī, -ōrum, m. pl.
grief, dolor, dolōris, m.
guard, praesidium, -ī, n.
guide, regō, regere, rēxī, rēctum.

H

halt, cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī.
Hamilcar, Hamilcar, Hamilcaris, m.
hand, manus, -ūs, f.; *hand over*, trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum.
Hannibal, Hannibal, Hannibalis, m.

happen, accidō, accidere, accidī.
harass, lacessō, lacessere, lacessīvī, lacessītum.
hardly, vix.
harm: do harm to, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat.
hasten, properō, properāre, properāvī, properātum; contendō, contendere, contendī, contentum.
hatred, odium, -ī, n.
have, habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum.
he, is, 483; *him* (reflexive), suī, 482.
head, prīnceps, prīncipis, m.
hear, audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum.
heavy, gravis, grave.
height, altitūdō, altitūdinis, f.
here, hīc.
hesitate, dubitō, dubitāre, dubitāvī, dubitātum.
hide, abdō, abdere, abdidī, abditum.
high, altus, -a, -um; *highest*, summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, collis, m.
himself (reflexive), suī, 482; (intensive), ipse, 484.
his, ēius; (reflexive), suus, -a, -um.
hither, hūc.
hold, teneō, tenēre, tenuī; obtineō, obtinēre, obtinuī, obtentum; contineō, continēre, continuī, contentum.
home, domus, -ūs, f., 463.
honor, honor, honōris, m.
hope, spēs, -eī, f.; spērō, spērāre, spērāvī, spērātum.
hopeless: be hopeless, dēspērō, dēspērāre, dēspērāvī, dēspērātum.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseman, eques, equitis, m.
hospitality, hospitium, -ī, n.
hostage, obses, obsidis, m.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
however, autem.
humble, humilis, humile, 475.
hundred: two hundred, ducentī, -ae, -a, pl.; *four hundred*, quadringentī, -ae, -a, pl.
hurl, coniciō, conicere, coniēcī, coniectum.

I

I, ego, meī, 481.
if, sī; *if not*, nisi.
immediately, statim.
immortal, immortālis, immortāle.
impede, impediō, impedīre, impedīvī, impedītum.
important, gravis, grave.
in, in, prep. with abl.; abl. of respect; abl. of time.
increase, augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum.
indeed, quidem.
infantry, peditēs, -um, m. pl.
inflict: inflict upon, īnferō, īnferre, intulī, inlātum, 497, with dat.; *inflict punishment*, supplicium sūmere.
influence, grātia, -ae, f.; auctōritās, auctōritātis, f.; permoveō, permovēre, permōvī, permōtum.
inform, certiōrem facere.
inhabit, incolō, incolere, incoluī.
injure, noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitum, with dat.
injury, iniūria, -ae, f.
inquire, quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum.

insignia, īnsignia, -ium, n. pl.
instantly, statim.
instruct, praecipiō, praecipere, praecēpī, praeceptum, with dat.
insurrection, sēditiō, sēditiōnis, f.
intend, cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum; *intending to*, fut. act. part.
interrupt, intermittō, intermittere, intermīsī, intermissum.
interval, intervāllum, -ī, n.
into, in, prep. with acc.
intrust, mandō, mandāre, mandāvī, mandātum.
island, īnsula, -ae, f.
it, is, ea, id, 483.
Italy, Italia, -ae, f.
its, ēius; (reflexive), suus, -a, -um.

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, n.
join, coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum; *join battle*, proelium committere.
Jove, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
Jupiter, Iuppiter, Iovis, m.
justice, iūstitia, -ae, f.

K

keep, cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātum; teneō, tenēre, tenuī.
kill, occīdō, occīdere, occīdī, occīsum; interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum.
kind, genus, generis, n.
kindness, beneficium, -ī, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
know, sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum; *not know*, nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum.
knowledge, scientia, -ae, f.

L

Labienus, Labiēnus, -ī, m.
labor, labor, labōris, m.
lack, careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus.
land, terra, -ae, f.
large, magnus, -a, -um, 476.
last: at last, tandem.
Latins, Latīnī, -ōrum, m. pl.
law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lead, dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum; *lead across*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum; *lead back*, redūcō, redūcere, redūxī, reductum; *lead into*, indūcō, indūcere, indūxī, inductum; *lead out*, ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum.
leader, dux, ducis, m.
leadership, prīncipātus, -ūs, m.
leading man, prīnceps, prīncipis, m.
learn, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum.
least, minimus, -a, -um; minimē, adv.
leave, relinquō, relinquere, relīquī, relictum.
left, sinister, sinistra, sinistrum.
legion, legiō, legiōnis, f.
less, minor, minus, comp.; minus, adv.
lest, nē, conj. with subj.
letter, litterae, -ārum, f. pl.
level, aequus, -a, -um.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, lūx, lūcis, f.

like, similis, simile, 475, with dat.
likewise, item.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.
little, parvus, -a, -um, 476; *very little*, minimē, adv.
live, habitō, habitāre, habitāvī, habitātum.
long, longus, -a, -um; *long, a long time*, diū, 478; *no longer*, nōn iam.
look out for, cōnsulō, cōnsulere, cōnsuluī, cōnsultum, with dat.
loose, solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum.
loss, dētrīmentum, -ī, n.
love, amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum.
lower, inferior, inferius, comp.

M

magistrate, magistrātus, -ūs, m.
make, creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum; faciō, facere, fēcī, factum; *be made*, fīō, fierī, factus sum, 499; *make war upon*, bellum inferre.
man, vir, virī, m., 458; homō, hominis, m. and f.
many, multī, -ae, -a, pl., 311, 312.
march, iter, itineris, n.; iter facere.
marriage, mātrimōnium, -ī, n.
marsh, palūs, palūdis, f.
matter, rēs, -eī, f.
meanwhile, interim, intereā.
meet, occurrō, occurrere, occucurrī or occurrī, occursum, with dat.
memory, memoria, -ae, f.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.
middle, the middle of, medius, -a, -um.
miles, mīlia passuum.
military, mīlitāris, mīlitāre.
mind, animus, -ī, m.
miserable, miser, misera, miserum.
misfortune, incommodum, -ī, n.
missile, tēlum, -ī, n.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
more, comp. degree; plūs, plūris, 312; plūs, adv.; magis, adv.
most, sup. degree; plūrimus, -a, -um; plūrimum, adv.; maximē, adv.
mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum; *move away*, dēmigrō, dēmigrāre, dēmigrāvī, dēmigrātum.
much, multus, -a, -um, 311, 312; multum, adv., 318; *by much, much*, multō; *so much*, tantus, -a, -um.
must, pass. periphrastic conjugation.
my, meus, -a, -um.
myself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 484.

N

name, nōmen, nōminis, n.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, populus, -ī, m.
nature, nātūra, -ae, f.
near, ad, prep. with acc.; prope, adv., and prep. with acc.; propinquus, -a, -um; *nearer*, propior, propius, comp., with dat.; *nearest*, proximus, -a, -um, with dat.
nearly, prope.
neglect, neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum.
neighboring, propinquus, -a, -um.
neighbors, fīnitimī, -ōrum, m. pl.
neither, neuter, neutra, neutrum, 288.
never, numquam.

new, novus, -a, -um.
news, nūntius, -ī, m.
next, deinde, adv.; posterus, -a, -um; *the next day*, postrīdiē.
night, nox, noctis, f.; *at night*, noctū.
nine, novem.
no, nūllus, -a, -um, 288; *no one*, nēmō, m. and f., 237 (note); *no longer*, nōn iam.
noble, *of noble birth*, nōbilis, nōbile.
nor, neque or nec.
not, nōn; *and not*, neque or nec.
nothing, nihil, indeclinable, n.
Numa, Numa, -ae, m.
number, numerus, -ī, m.; *great number*, *number*, multitūdō, multitūdinis, f.

O

oath, iūs iūrandum, iūris iūrandī, n.
observe, cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātum.
obtain, impetrō, impetrāre, impetrāvī, impetrātum.
off: *come off*, discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discessum.
often, saepe.
old, senex, senis, 313 (note), 311; (not new), vetus, veteris, 469; (in exact statements of age), nātus, -a, -um; *old-time*, prīstinus, -a, -um.
on, in, prep. with abl.; (in certain expressions denoting position), ab or ā, prep. with abl.; abl. of time; *on account of*, abl. of cause; ob, propter, prep. with acc.
once, *once upon a time*, quondam; *at once*, statim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um, 465; *one . . . the other*, alter . . . alter; *one another*, inter sē; *one by one*, singulī, -ae, -a, pl.
only, ūnus, -a, -um, 465; *not only . . . but also*, nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam.
open, aperiō, aperīre, aperuī, apertum; apertus, -a, -um.
opinion, sententia, -ae, f.; opīniō, opīniōnis, f.
or, aut.
order, iubeō, iubēre, iussī, iussum; *in order that*, ut, quō, conj. with subj.; *in close order*, cōnfertus, -a, -um.
other, alius, alia, aliud, 465; *the other*, cēterī, -ae, -a, pl.; (of two), alter, altera, alterum, 465.
ought, dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum; pass. periphrastic conjugation.
our, *ours*, noster, nostra, nostrum.
out: *out of*, ex or ē, prep. with abl.; *bring out*, *lead out*, ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum; *find out*, cognōscō, cognōscere, cognōvī, cognitum; *go out*, ēgredior, ēgredī, ēgressus sum.
outermost, extrēmus, -a, -um.
outlet, exitus, -ūs, m.
outside of, extrā, prep. with acc.
over: *bring over*, trādūcō, trādūcere, trādūxī, trāductum.
overtake, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum.
overwhelm, premō, premere, pressī, pressum; opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum.
own: *his own*, *their own*, etc., suus, -a, -um.

P

pace, passus, -ūs, m.
panic-stricken, perterritus, -a, -um.
part, pars, partis, f.
pass, angustiae, -ārum, f. pl.
peace, pāx, pācis, f.
people, populus, -ī, m.; nātiō, nātiōnis, f.
perform, fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, with abl.
peril, perīculum, -ī, n.
permitted: it is permitted, licet, licēre, licuit or licitum est, 397 (note).
persuade, persuādeō, persuādēre, persuāsī, persuāsum, with dat.
pitch (a camp), pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum.
place, locus, -ī, m., 86 (note); pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum; conlocō, conlocāre, conlocāvī, conlocātum; *in that place*, ibi; *in place of*, prō, prep. with abl.; *take the place of*, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, with dat.
plan, cōnsilium, -ī, n.
pledge, fidēs, -eī, f.
plunder, praeda, -ae, f.
poison, venēnum, -ī, n.
Porsena, Porsena, -ae, m.
position, locus, -ī, m., 86 (note).
power, imperium, -ī, n.; potestās, potestātis, f.
powerful, potēns, potentis.
praetor, praetor, praetōris, m.
prefer, mālō, mālle, māluī, 496.
prepare, parō, parāre, parāvī, parātum; comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum; *prepared*, parātus, -a, -um.
press, *press hard*, premō, premere, pressī, pressum.
prevent, prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum.
prison, carcer, carceris, m.
prisoner, captīva, -ae, f.; captīvus, -ī, m.
procure, comparō, comparāre, comparāvī, comparātum.
promise, polliceor, pollicērī, pollicitus sum.
prosperity, secundae rēs.
protection, fidēs, -eī, f.
province, prōvincia, -ae, f.
punishment, supplicium, -ī, n.
purpose: for the purpose of, causā, with gen.
put in command of, praeficiō, praeficere, praefēcī, praefectum, with dat.
Pyrrhus, Pyrrhus, -ī, m.

Q

quarters: winter quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl.
quickly, celeriter.

R

race, genus, generis, n.
raise, tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum.
rampart, vāllum, -ī, n.
rather: wish rather, mālō, mālle, māluī, 496.
ravage, vāstō, vāstāre, vāstāvī, vāstātum.
ready, parātus, -a, -um.

rear, novissimum agmen.
reason, causa, -ae, f.; *for the reason that*, propterea quod.
recall, revocō, revocāre, revocāvī, revocātum.
receive, accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum; recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum.
recent, recēns, recentis.
recently, nūper.
reign, rēgnō, rēgnāre, rēgnāvī, rēgnātum.
reinforcement, subsidium, -ī, n.
remain, maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum.
remaining, reliquus, -a, -um.
remarkable, ēgregius, -a, -um.
remove, tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum; removeō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum.
renew, renovō, renovāre, renovāvī, renovātum.
reply, respōnsum, -ī, n.
report, fāma, -ae, f.; nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum; renūntiō, renūntiāre, renūntiāvī, renūntiātum.
republic, rēs pūblica.
repulse, repellō, repellere, reppulī, repulsum.
reputation, opīniō, opīniōnis, f.
rescue, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum.
reserve, subsidium, -ī, n.
resist, resistō, resistere, restitī, with dat.
resources, opēs, -um, f. pl.
rest: the rest of, reliquus, -a, -um.
restore, reddō, reddere, reddidī, redditum; restituō, restituere, restituī, restitūtum.
result, fiō, fierī, factus sum, 499.
retain, retineō, retinēre, retinuī, retentum.
retreat, sē recipere, pedem referre.
return, revertor, revertī, revertī, reversum, 388 (note).
reward, praemium, -ī, n.
ridge, iugum, -ī, n.
right, dexter, dextra, dextrum; *right, rights*, iūs, iūris, n.
river, flūmen, flūminis, n.
road, via, -ae, f.
roam, vagor, vagārī, vagātus sum.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um; *the Romans*, Rōmānī, -ōrum, m. pl.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
Romulus, Rōmulus, -ī, m.
rouse, incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum.
rout, fugō, fugāre, fugāvī, fugātum; pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum.
route, iter, itineris, n.
rule, imperō, imperāre, imperāvī, imperātum, with dat.; imperium, -ī, n.

S

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. pl.
sacrifice, sacrificium, -ī, n.
safety, salūs, salūtis, f.
Saguntum, Saguntum, -ī, n.
sailor, nauta, -ae, m.
same, īdem, eadem, idem, 483; *at the same time*, simul.
save, servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum.
say, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum; *said he*, inquit.

Scaevola, **Scaevola, -ae**, m.
Scipio, **Scīpiō, Scīpiōnis**, m.
scout, **explōrātor, explōrātōris**, m.
sea, **mare, maris**, n.
second: a second time, **iterum**.
sedition, **sēditiō, sēditiōnis**, f.
see, **videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum**.
seek, **petō, petere, petīvī** or **petiī, petītum**.
seem, pass. of **videō**.
seize, **occupō, occupāre, occupāvī, occupātum**; **comprehendō, comprehendere, comprehendī, comprehēnsum**.
select, **dēligō, dēligere, dēlēgī, dēlēctum**.
self: himself, themselves, etc. (reflexive), **suī**, 482; (intensive), **ipse, ipsa, ipsum**, 484.
senate, **senātus, -ūs**, m.
senators, **patrēs, -um**, m. pl.
send, **mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum**; *send away*, **dīmittō, dīmittere, dīmīsī, dīmissum**; *send back*, **remittō, remittere, remīsī, remissum**; *send forward*, **praemittō, praemittere, praemīsī, praemissum**.
services, **opera, -ae**, f.
set: set free, **līberō, līberāre, līberāvī, līberātum**; *set sail*, **nāvem solvere**.
settle, **cōnsīdō, cōnsīdere, cōnsēdī, cōnsessum**.
seven, **septem**.
seventh, **septimus, -a, -um**.
several, **complūrēs, complūra**, pl., 330 (note); **nōn nūllī**.
sharp, **ācer, ācris, ācre**.
she, **ea**, 483; *her* (reflexive), **suī**, 482.
ship, **nāvis, nāvis**, f., 185 (note).
short, **brevis, breve**.
show, **dēmōnstrō, dēmōnstrāre, dēmōnstrāvī, dēmōnstrātum**.
side, **pars, partis**, f.; **latus, lateris**, n.; *from all sides*, **undique**; *on this side of*, **citrā**, prep. with acc.
siege, **oppugnātiō, oppugnātiōnis**, f.
sight, **cōnspectus, -ūs**, m.
signal, **signum, -ī**, n.
since, **cum**, conj. with subj.
six, **sex**.
size, **magnitūdō, magnitūdinis**, f.
slave, **servus, -ī**, m.
slavery, **servitūs, servitūtis**, f.
small, **parvus, -a, -um**, 476.
so, **sīc, ita**, (modifying adjectives and adverbs) **tam**; *so great, so much*, **tantus, -a, -um**; *so that*, **ut, quō**, conj. with subj.; *and so*, **itaque**.
soldier, **mīles, mīlitis**, m.
some, **nōn nūllī**; *some, some one, something*, **aliquis (aliquī), aliqua, aliquid (aliquod)**, 487; *some . . . others*, **aliī . . . aliī**.
son, **fīlius, -ī**, m.
speak, **dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum**.
spend the winter, **hiemō, hiemāre, hiemāvī, hiemātum**.
spur, **calcar, calcāris**, n.
standard, **signum, -ī**, n.
start, **proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum**.
state, **cīvitās, cīvitātis**, f.
station, **cōnstituō, cōnstituere, cōnstituī, cōnstitūtum**.
stay, **maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum**.

strength, vīrēs, -ium, f. pl.
strengthen, cōnfīrmō, cōnfīrmāre, cōnfīrmāvī, cōnfīrmātum.
strong, fīrmus, -a, -um.
stronghold, castellum, -ī, n.
subdue, pācō, pācāre, pācāvī, pācātum.
succeed, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, with dat.
successfully, bene, 318.
sudden, repentīnus, -a, -um.
suddenly, subitō.
suffer, accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum.
suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.
superhuman, dīvīnus, -a, -um.
supply of grain, rēs frūmentāria.
surpass, praestō, praestāre, praestitī, praestitum or praestātum, with dat.
surrender, trādō, trādere, trādidī, trāditum; dēditiō, dēditiōnis, f.
surround, circumdō, circumdare, circumdedī, circumdatum, 54 (note); circumveniō, circumvenīre, circumvēnī, circumventum.
suspicion, suspīciō, suspīciōnis, f.
sustain, sustineō, sustinēre, sustinuī, sustentum.
sword, gladius, -ī, m.
Syracuse, Syrācūsae, -ārum, f. pl.

T

take, capiō, capere, cēpī, captum; sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum; *take away*, ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum; *take a position*, cōnsistō, cōnsistere, cōnstitī; *take by assault*, expugnō, expugnāre, expugnāvī, expugnātum; *take the place of*, succēdō, succēdere, successī, successum, with dat.
task, mūnus, mūneris, n.
tell, dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum.
ten, decem.
tenth, decimus, -a, -um.
terms, condiciō, condiciōnis, f.
terrify, terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum.
territory, ager, agrī, m.; fīnēs, -ium, m. pl.
than, abl. of comparison; quam.
that (demonstrative), ille, illa, illud, 483; is, ea, id, 483; *that of yours*, *that*, iste, ista, istud, 483; (relative), quī, quae, quod, 485; indirect statement; *in order that*, *so that*, *that*, ut, quō, conj. with subj.; *that not*, nē, conj. with subj.; ut nōn; *for the reason that*, propterea quod.
their, eōrum, eārum, eōrum; (reflexive), suus, -a, -um.
themselves (reflexive), suī, 482; (intensive), ipsī, -ae, -a.
then, tum, deinde.
there, ibi; *from there*, inde.
therefore, itaque, quā rē.
they, iī or eī, eae, ea; *them* (reflexive), suī, 482.
thing, rēs, -eī, f.
think, putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum; arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum; exīstimō, exīstimāre, exīstimāvī, exīstimātum.
third, tertius, -a, -um.
thirty, trīgintā.

this, hic, haec, hoc, 483; is, ea, id, 483.
thither, eō.
three, trēs, tria, pl., 480; *three days*, trīduum, -ī, n.
throne, rēgnum, -ī, n.
through, per, prep. with acc.
throw, iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum; *throw into confusion*, perturbō, perturbāre, perturbāvī, perturbātum.
thus, sīc, ita.
time, tempus, temporis, n.; *at that time*, tum; *at the same time*, simul.
to, dat.; ad, prep. with acc.
together: all together, ūniversus, -a, -um; *bring together*, cōnferō, cōnferre, contulī, conlātum, 497; *come together*, conveniō, convenīre, convēnī, conventum.
town, oppidum, -ī, n.
trader, mercātor, mercātōris, m.
treachery, īnsidiae, -ārum, f. pl.
treat, agō, agere, ēgī, āctum.
tree, arbor, arboris, f.
trench, fossa, -ae, f.
tribe, gēns, gentis, f.
tribune, tribūnus, -ī, m.
Trojans, Trōiānī, -ōrum, m. pl.
troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.
Troy, Trōia, -ae, f.
trust, fīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, 382, with dat.
trustworthiness, fidēs, -eī, f.
try, temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum; cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum.
turn, vertō, vertere, vertī, versum; *turn about*, convertō, convertere, convertī, conversum; *turn aside*, āvertō, āvertere, āvertī, āversum.
twenty, vīgintī.
two, duo, duae, duo, 480; *two hundred*, ducenti, -ae, -a, pl.

U

unbroken, perpetuus, -a, -um.
uncommon, ēgregius, -a, -um.
under, sub, prep. with acc. and abl.
understand, intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum.
undertake, suscipiō, suscipere, suscēpī, susceptum.
unfair, inīquus, -a, -um.
unfavorable, inīquus, -a, -um.
unite, coniungō, coniungere, coniūnxī, coniūnctum.
unless, nisi.
unlike, dissimilis, dissimile, 475, with dat.
unobstructed, expedītus, -a, -um.
unprotected, apertus, -a, -um.
unwilling: be unwilling, nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, 496.
up, ūsque; *up to*, ūsque ad; *draw up*, īnstruō, īnstruere, īnstrūxī, īnstrūctum; *follow up*, cōnsequor, cōnsequī, cōnsecūtus sum; *give up*, dēsistō, dēsistere, dēstitī, dēstitum.
upon: make war upon, bellum īnferre.
urge, cohortor, cohortārī, cohortātus sum; *urge on*, incitō, incitāre, incitāvī, incitātum.
use, ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, with abl.
utmost, summus, -a, -um.

V

vacant: be vacant, vacō, vacāre, vacāvī, vacātum.
valor, virtūs, virtūtis, f.
very, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 484; sup. degree.
vessel, nāvis, nāvis, f., 185 (note).
victor, victor, victōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vīcus, -ī, m.
violence, vīs, vīs, f., 463.

W

wage, gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum.
wait for, exspectō, exspectāre, exspectāvī, exspectātum.
wall, mūrus, -ī, m.
want, inopia, -ae, f.
war, bellum, -ī, n.
warn, moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum.
watch, vigilia, -ae, f.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
way: in this way, sīc, ita.
weapon, tēlum, -ī, n.
well, bene, 318.
what, quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), 486.
when, ubi, conj. with perf. ind.; cum, conj. with past and past perf. subj.
where, ubi.
whether, -ne.
which (rel.), quī, quae, quod, 485; (interrog.), quis (quī), quae, quid (quod), 486; (of two), uter, utra, utrum, 465.
while, dum, conj. with pres. ind.
who (rel.), quī, quae, 485; (interrog.), quis, 486.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um, 288.
why, quā rē.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
widely, lātē.
wife, uxor, uxōris, f.
willing: be willing, volō, velle, voluī, 496.
win over, conciliō, conciliāre, conciliāvī, conciliātum.
wing, cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, hiems, hiemis, f.; *winter quarters*, hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl.
wise, prūdēns, prūdentis.
wish, cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītum; volō, velle, voluī, 496; voluntās, voluntātis, f.; *wish rather*, mālō, mālle, māluī, 496.
with, abl. of means; abl. of manner; cum, prep. with abl.
withdraw, excēdō, excēdere, excessī, excessum.
within, abl. of time; intrā, prep. with acc.
without, sine, prep. with abl.; *be without*, careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus.
wolf, lupa, -ae, f.
woman, fēmina, -ae, f.; mulier, mulieris, f.
wood, silva, -ae, f.
work, opus, operis, n.
wound, vulnus, vulneris, n.; vulnerō, vulnerāre, vulnerāvī, vulnerātum.
wretched, miser, misera, miserum.
write, scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.
yet, tamen; *not yet*, nōndum.
yield, concēdō, concēdere, concessī, concessum.
you, tū, tuī, 481.
young, iuvenis, iuvenis, 313 (note). 311; *young man*, adulēscēns, adulēscentis, m.
your, *yours*, tuus, -a, -um; vester, vestra, vestrum; *that of yours*, iste, ista, istud, 483.
yourself, ipse, ipsa, ipsum, 484.

INDEX

The numbers refer to sections, except those with *p.* and *n.*, which refer to page and foot-note.

Ablative:
  of separation, 133, 516.
  of agent, 41, 517.
  of means, 64, 518.
  of accompaniment, 97, 519.
  of manner, 321, 520.
  of cause or reason, 106, 521.
  of comparison, 309, 522.
  of measure of difference, 315, 523.
  descriptive, 111, 524.
  of respect, 175, 525.
  of time, 344, 526.
  with certain deponents, 385, 527.
  absolute, 394, 528.
  place where, 253, 529.
  place from which, 255, 531.
Absolute comparative and superlative, 297.
Accent, 8, 76, 243.
Accompaniment, abl. of, 97, 519.
Accusative:
  direct object, 32, 514.
  of extent or duration, 339, 515.
  place to which, 254, 530.
  in indirect statements, 368, 544.
Adjectives:
  first and second declensions, 74, 93, 464.
  pronominal, 288, 465.
  third declension, 212–214, 466–469.
  comparison, 294, 304, 305, 311, 473–476.
  declension of comparative, 295, 471, 472.
  agreement, 80, 502.
  with dat., 89, 509.
  used as substantive, p. 61, n. 1; p. 75, n. 2.
Adverbs, formation and comparison, 317, 318, 477, 478.
Adversative cum-clauses, 402, 543.
Agent, abl. of, 41, 517.
  dat. of, 430, 513.
Agreement:
  verb, 16, 500.
  participle, 225.
  noun, 72, 501.
  adjective, 80, 502.
  relative pronoun, 143, 503.
Aliquis, 353, 487.
Alius, declension, 288, 465.
Alphabet, 1.
Alter, declension, 288, 465.
Appositive noun, 72, 501.

Cardinal numerals, see *Numerals*.
Case-endings, 68, 158, 244; see also *Declension*.
Causal cum-clauses, 402, 543.
Cause, abl. of, 106, 521.
Comparison, see *Adjectives* and *Adverbs*.
  abl. of, 309, 522.
Compound verbs, 238.
  with dat., 241, 508.

Conditional complexes, 446.
present and past neutral, 454, 455, 550.
more vivid future, 450, 455, 551.
less vivid future, 450, 455, 552.
contrary to fact, 454, 455, 553.
Conjugation, see *Verb*.
Cum, enclitic, p. 64, n. 1.
Cum-clauses, of situation, 407, 542.
causal and adversative, 402, 543.

Dative:
indirect object, 57, 506.
with intransitive verbs, 224, 507.
with compound verbs, 241, 508.
with adjectives, 89, 509.
of purpose or tendency, 301, 510.
double dative construction, 302, 511.
of possession, 421, 512.
of agent, 430, 513.
Declension:
first, 27, 457.
second, 66, 75, 91, 458.
third, 157, 165, 166, 171, 183, 189, 459, 460; classes with gen. pl. in **ium**, 191.
fourth, 228, 461.
fifth, 234, 235, 462.
irregular, 463.
See also *Adjectives*, *Participles*, *Numerals*. For the declension of pronouns, see the particular words.
Demonstrative pronouns, see the particular words.
Deponent verbs, 377, 492.
with abl., 385, 527.
Descriptive genitive and ablative, 111, 505, 524.
Descriptive relative clauses, 292, 541.
Deus, declension, 463.
Difference, abl. of measure of, 315, 523.
Direct object, 32, 514.
Domus, declension, 463.
Double dative construction, 302, 511.
Dum, pres. ind. with, 163, 532.
Duo, declension, 480.
Duration, acc. of, 339, 515.

Ego, declension, 481.
Enclitics, p. 8, n. 2.
Endings, see *Case-endings*, *Personal endings*, *Verb*.
Eō, conjugation, 404, 498.
Extent, acc. of, 339, 515.

Ferō, conjugation, 396, 497.
Fīō, conjugation, 418, 499.
Future, tense-sign, 85, 100.
in subordinate clauses, 155.
Future perfect, formation, 149.
in subordinate clauses, 155.

Gender of nouns:
first declension, 67.
second declension, 67, 92.
third declension, 159.
fourth declension, 229.
fifth declension, 236.
Genitive, descriptive, 111, 505.
translated with *for*, p. 54, n. 4.
Gerund, 432.
use, 435.
Gerundive, 219.
use, 435.
with **sum**, 221, 427.

Harmony of tenses, 333, 547.
with historical present, p. 132, n. 1.

Hic, declension, 483.
use, 114.
Historical present, p. 86, n. 1.

Īdem, declension, 129, 483.
Ille, declension, 483.
use, 114.
Imperative, personal endings, 347, 488.
irregular forms, 348.
Impersonal verb, p. 137, n. 3.
Indefinite pronouns, 353, 487.
use of **quis** and **quisquam**, 354.
Indirect object, 57, 506.
Indirect questions, 327, 546.
Indirect statements, 368, 544.
Indirect subordinate clauses, 390, 545.
Infinitive, formation, 21, 365, 370.
omission of **esse** in fut. act. and perf. pass., p. 127, n. 1.
in indirect statements, 368, 544.
use of tenses, 374, 548.
Intensive pronoun, declension, 205, 484.
use, 209.
Interrogative pronoun, 145, 486.
Intransitive verbs with dat., 224, 507.
Ipse, declension, 205, 484.
use, 209.
Is, declension, 483.
use, 130, 197.
Iste, declension, 483.
use, 114.

Locative, 250, 529.

Mālō, conjugation, 409, 496.
Manner, abl. of, 321, 520.
Means, abl. of, 64, 518.
Measure of difference, abl. of, 315, 523.
Mīlle, declension, 480.

nē, in clauses of purpose, 261, 534.
in substantive clauses of volition, 268, 537.
Neuter, declension, 288.
Nōlō, conjugation, 409, 496.
Nominative, subject, 31, 504.
Nouns, see *Declension*.
agreement, 72, 501.
Nūllus, declension, 288.
Numerals:
cardinal, 335, 479; declension, 336, 480; use, 338.
ordinal, 341, 479.

Object, direct, 32, 514.
indirect, 57, 506.
Order of words, 554–566.
Ordinal numerals, 341, 479.

Participles, formation, 219.
declension, 220, 470.
fut. act. and gerundive with **sum**, 221, 423, 427.
agreement, 225.
translation, 226; p. 139, n. 2.
Past, tense-sign in indicative, 52.
use, 53, 120.
formation in subjunctive, 270.
Past perfect, formation in indicative, 135.
formation in subjunctive, 329.
Perfect, personal endings in indicative active, 119, 488.
formation in indicative passive, 124.
uses, 120.
formation in subjunctive, 323.

Periphrastic conjugation, active, 423.
passive, 427.
Personal endings, 488.
active, 11, 51.
passive, 37.
perf. ind. act., 119.
pres. imp., 347.
Personal pronouns, declension, 481.
use of is instead of, 197.
Place, where, 250, 253, 529.
to which, 254, 530.
from which, 255, 531.
Plūs, declension, 312, 472.
Position of words, 554–566.
Possession, dat. of, 421, 512.
Possessive adjectives, 199, 210.
Possum, conjugation, 387, 494.
Postquam, perf. ind. with, 169, 533.
Predicate noun, 72, 501.
Present, stem, 19, 21, 43, 257.
historical, p. 86, n. 1.
formation in subjunctive, 257.
Principal parts, 125.
Pronominal adjectives, 288, 465.
Pronouns, see the particular word.
Pronunciation, 2–4, 6–8.
Prōsum, conjugation, 387, 495.
Purpose, various ways of expressing, 442.
clauses of, 261, 534.
relative clauses of, 267, 535.
quō-clauses of, 412, 536.
supine in **um** expressing, 440, 549.
dat. of, 301, 510.

Quam, in comparisons, 309, 522.
with superlative, 375.
Quantity, vowels, 4.
syllables, 7.
Quī, declension, 485.
Quīdam, 353, 487.
Quis (interrog.), 145, 486.
(indef.), 353, 354, 487.
Quisquam, 353, 354, 487.
Quisque, 353, 487.
Quō-clauses of purpose, 412, 536.

Reason, abl. of, 106, 521.
Reflexive pronoun, declension, 204, 482.
use, 208; p. 119, n. 1.
Relative clauses:
of purpose, 267, 535.
of result, 281, 539.
descriptive, 292, 541.
Relative pronoun, declension, 485.
agreement, 143, 503.
Respect, abl. of, 175, 525.
Result, clauses of, 280, 538.
relative clauses of, 281, 539.
substantive clauses of, 286, 540.

Semi-deponent verbs, 382.
Separation, abl. of, 133, 516.
Situation, **cum**-clauses of, 407, 542.
Sōlus, declension, 288.
Sounds, 2.
Subject, 31, 504.
omission, 198.
in indirect statements, 368, 544.
Subjunctive, formation of present, 257; of past, 270; of perfect, 323; of past perfect, 329.
in clauses of purpose, 261, 267, 534, 535.
in substantive clauses of volition, 268, 537.
in clauses of result, 280, 281, 286, 538–540.
in descriptive relative clauses, 292, 541.
in **cum**-clauses of situation, 407, 542.

Subjunctive (*continued*)
in causal and adversative **cum**-clauses, 402, 543.
in indirect subordinate clauses, 390, 545.
in indirect questions, 327, 546.
use of tenses, 333, 547.
in less vivid future conditional complexes, 450, 455, 552.
in conditional complexes contrary to fact, 454, 455, 553.
Substantive, adjective used as, p. 61, n. 1; p. 75, n. 2.
clauses of volition, 268, 537.
clauses of result, 286, 540.
Suī, declension, 204, 482.
use, 208.
Sum, conjugation, 493.
Supine, 437.
use: in **um**, 440, 549; in **ū**, 441.
Syllables, 6.
quantity, 7.
Synopsis of verbs, 359.

Tendency, dat. of, 301, 510.
Tenses, harmony of, 333, 547.
with historical present, p. 132, n. 1.
use of infinitive tenses, 374, 548.
For formation and tense-sign, see the name of the tense.
Time, acc. of duration of, 339, 515.
abl. of, 344, 526.
Tōtus, declension, 288.
Trēs, declension, 480.
Tū, declension, 481.

Ubi, perf. ind. with, 169, 533.
Ūllus, declension, 288.
Ūnus, declension, 288, 465.
Ut, in clauses of purpose, 261, 534.
in substantive clauses of volition, 268, 537.
in clauses of result, 280, 286, 538, 540.
Uter, declension, 288, 465.
Uterque, declension, 288.

Verb, endings, 358; see also *Personal endings*. For formation and tense-sign, see the name of the tense; also *Infinitive*, *Participles*, *Gerund*, *Supine*.
first conjugation, 489.
four regular conjugations, 490.
in **iō** of third conjugation, 177, 491.
deponent, 377, 492.
semi-deponent, 382.
irregular, see the particular word.
synopsis, 359.
active periphrastic conjugation, 423.
passive periphrastic conjugation, 427.
agreement, 16, 500.
Vetus, declension, 469.
Vīs, declension, 463.
Vocative, 243.
Volition, substantive clauses of, 268, 537.
Volō, conjugation, 409, 496.

THE following pages contain advertisements of a few of the Macmillan books on kindred subjects.

HIGH SCHOOL COURSE IN LATIN COMPOSITION

BY

CHARLES McCOY BAKER
Horace Mann High School, Teachers College

AND

ALEXANDER JAMES INGLIS
Horace Mann High School, Teachers College

Cloth 12mo xiii + 464 pages $1.00

The "High School Course in Latin Composition" is planned to furnish material for practice in writing Latin during the last three years of the course. The exercises are divided into three parts which correspond to the years in which Cæsar, Cicero, and Vergil are read.

Part I treats the syntax of nouns and the following subjects in the syntax of verbs: indirect questions, tense sequence, simple sentences in indirect discourse, purpose and result clauses, infinitives, gerunds and gerundives, *cum* clauses, participles, the ablative absolute, the passive periphrastic conjugation, and complex sentences in indirect discourse.

Part II develops the syntax of the verb and supplements the noun syntax of Part I.

The first twenty-four lessons of Part III review and supplement the syntax of Parts I and II; the rest are exercises in writing connected prose.

The exercises have been so based on the texts of Cæsar and Cicero usually read in our schools, as to summarize the content of those texts and to have sequence of thought from sentence to sentence. However, the text has not been so closely followed as to lead students to look for aid from that source.

A general English-Latin vocabulary is given at the end of the book. In addition a set of special vocabularies, consisting of twenty words, is given for each lesson, at the ends of Parts I, II, and III. Great care has been taken to make these vocabularies as serviceable as possible, and not only the individual words are given, but the idioms associated with those words and the references to the principles of syntax with them.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY
64-66 Fifth Avenue, New York

BOSTON CHICAGO ATLANTA DALLAS SAN FRANCISCO

The Macmillan Latin Series

CÆSAR — The Gallic War. Books I to VII. Edited by A. L. Hodges, Wadleigh High School, New York City. Cloth, xiii+522 pp. Maps and Illustrations. $1.25.

HODGES' CÆSAR is in itself sufficient reason for retaining the Gallic War in the high school course. The text is that of the approved German edition of Meusel. There is a remarkably good historical introduction made up of the following topics: "The Life of Cæsar," "Gallic Wars before 58 B. C.," "Cæsar's Field of Military Operations," "Roman Military Organization in Cæsar's Time," "Books for Reference and Reading." Part of Book VI and all of Book VII have been edited for sight-reading in accordance with the plan of the series. As many teachers prefer to read Book II first, the notes and grammatical references have here been made very full. The maps and illustrations of this volume have been particularly commended. Campaign maps are on the same scale as the map of Gaul given as a general reference map, and Roman geographical names are used throughout.

CORNELIUS NEPOS — Twenty Lives. Edited by J. E. Barss, Hotchkiss School. Cloth, xiv+316 pp. Maps and Illustrations. $0.90.

BARSS' NEPOS is an attractive volume designed to fill the demand for an alternative text to Cæsar for use in second year Latin. There are two divisions of the text, one intended for study and prepared translation, the other for sight-reading. The first twelve Lives with the Praefatio and the Life of Epaminondas are edited with full commentary and with grammatical references. The second part, arranged for sight-reading, includes seven Lives with foot-notes on the same page with the text. The vocabulary covers the whole text and any part of the text therefore is suitable to be used for prepared work or for rapid reading. Exercises for composition are provided in this book.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Publishers **64-66 Fifth Avenue** **New York**

The Macmillan Latin Series

MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO — Ten Orations, with Letters to his Wife. Edited by R. A. von Minckwitz, DeWitt Clinton High School, New York City. Cloth, xiii+518 pp. Maps and Illustrations. $1.25.

VON MINCKWITZ'S CICERO presents ten orations — the four against Catiline, those on the Manilian Law, for Archias and for Milo, the fourteenth Philippic, and those for Marcellus and for Ligarius. The last two, together with some of the Epistulae ad Familiares, have been edited for sight-reading. In the first Catilinarian oration, where such splendid material is found for reading aloud with rhetorical emphasis, words which should receive the stress of the voice have been italicized. The introduction of sixty-six pages covers the historical setting of the selections very adequately. Besides a life of Cicero, there are summaries of the conditions surrounding the delivery of each oration, a discussion of the letters, and an account of the Roman Constitution, which proves invaluable to an understanding of Cicero and his times. The notes, grammatical references, and illustrations are fitting additions to the text.

OVID — Selections from the Poems. Edited by C. W. Bain, Professor of Ancient Languages in South Carolina College, and recently Head-Master of the Sewanee Grammar School of the University of the South. Cloth, xiv+461 pp. Illustrations. $1.10.

BAIN'S POEMS OF OVID contains about four thousand verses selected in the main from the bright and interesting Metamorphoses. Filled as they are with myth and fable told in simple Latin, they are ever attractive to young readers and they form an invaluable introduction to the writings of Vergil. One thousand verses are set apart for sight-reading, and special attention is called to the meaning of Latin word-order. Word-groups are provided which serve to increase the vocabulary of the beginner in Latin verse. The introduction includes a life of Ovid and a discussion of scansion and versification.

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Publishers **64–66 Fifth Avenue** **New York**

Reference Books for Latin Classes

Baddeley:
Recent Discoveries in the Forum, 1898–1904 $1.25

Botsford:
Roman Assemblies 4.00

Botsford:
The Story of Rome as Greeks and Romans Tell It .90

Church:
Roman Life in the Days of Cicero 50

Coleridge:
Res Romanae 70

Color Books of Travel and Description:
Rome 6.00

Fowler:
Social Life at Rome in the Age of Cicero . . 2.25

Goodrich:
Topics on Greek and Roman History 60

Greenidge:
Roman Public Life 2.50

Hare:
Walks in Rome 2.50

Lovell:
Stories in Stone from the Roman Forum . . 1.50

Tucker:
Life in the Roman World of Nero and St. Paul 2.50

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

Chicago 64-66 Fifth Avenue, New York San Francisco
Boston Atlanta Dallas

This book should be returned to the Library on or before the last date stamped below.

A fine of five cents a day is incurred by retaining it beyond the specified time.

Please return promptly.

JUN 15 1945